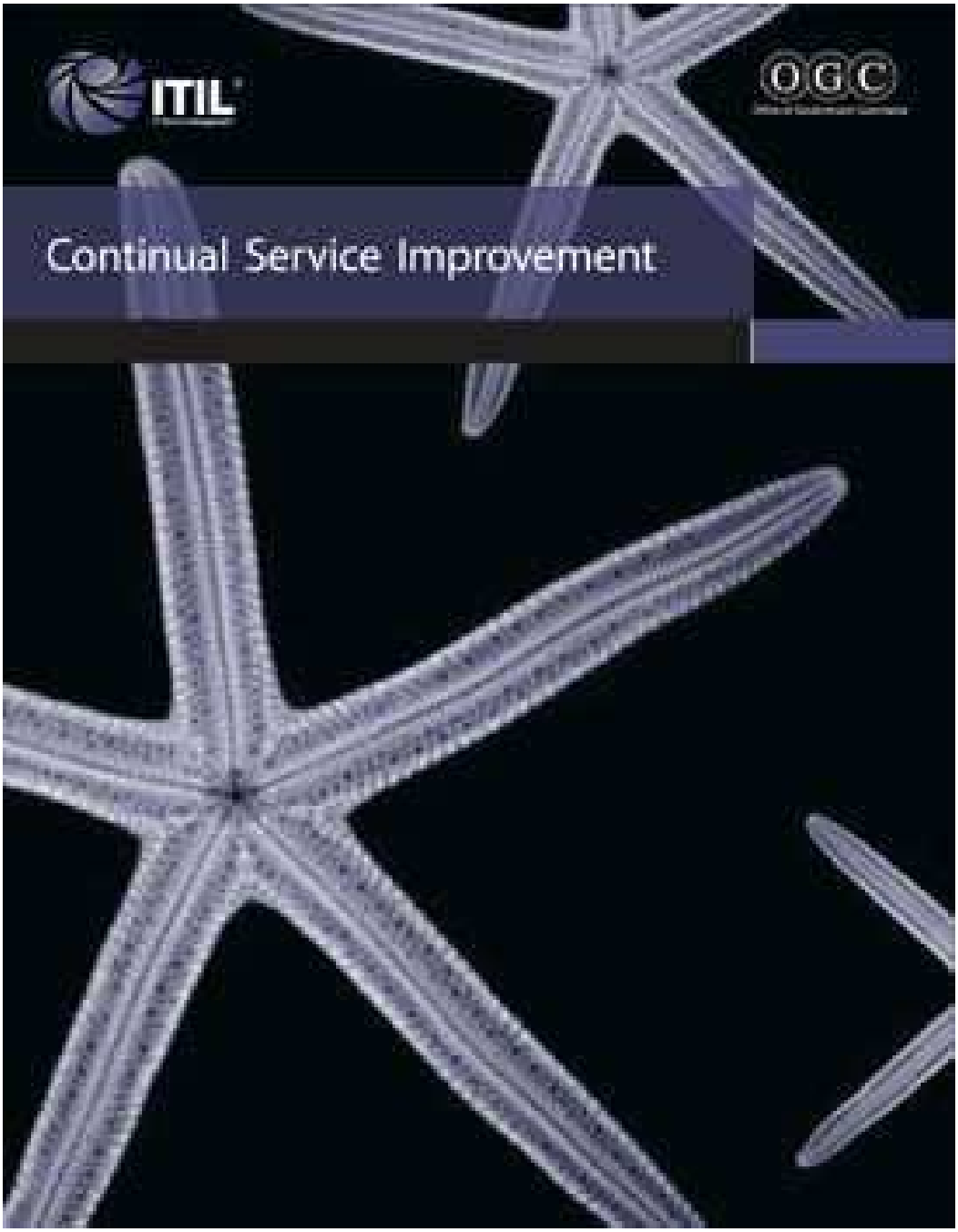
ITIL 2011 – Continual Service Improvement



I N D I C E

ITIL 2011 – Continual Service Improvement 1
1 Introduction 1
1.1 Overview 1
1.2 Context 1
1.3 ITIL in relation to other publications in the Best Management Practice portfolio 1
1.4 Why is ITIL so successful? 1
1.5 Chapter summary 1
1.1 Overview 2
1.1.1 Purpose and objectives of CSI 2
1.1.2 Scope 3
1.1.3 Usage 4
1.1.4 Value to business 4
1.1.5 Target audience 4
1.2 Context 5
1.2.1 Service strategy 5
1.2.2 Service design 6
1.2.3 Service transition 6
1.2.4 Service operation 7
1.2.5 Continual service improvement 7
1.3 ITIL in relation to other publications in the Best Management Practice portfolio 8
1.4 Why is ITIL so successful? 9
1.5 Chapter summary 10
2 Service management as a practice 12
2.1 Services and service management 12
2.2 Basic concepts 12
2.3 Governance and management systems 12
2.4 The service lifecycle 12
2.1 Services and service management 12
2.1.1 Services 12
2.1.2 Service management 14
2.1.3 IT service management 15
2.1.4 Service providers 16
2.1.5 Stakeholders in service management 17
2.1.6 Utility and warranty 17
2.1.7 Best practices in the public domain 19
2.2 Basic concepts 20
2.2.1 Assets, resources and capabilities 20
2.2.2 Processes 21
2.2.3 Organizing for service management 23
2.2.3.1 Functions 23

2.2.3.2 Roles 24
2.2.3.3 Organizational culture and behaviour 25
2.2.4 The service portfolio 25
2.2.5 Knowledge management and the SKMS 27
2.3 Governance and management systems 28
2.3.1 Governance 28
2.3.2 Management systems 29
2.4 The service lifecycle 31
2.4.1 Specialization and coordination across the lifecycle 31
2.4.2 Processes through the service lifecycle 32
3 Continual service improvement principles 35
3.1 Continual service improvement approach 35
3.2 CSI and organizational change 35
3.3 Ownership 36
3.4 CSI register 36
3.5 External and internal drivers 36
3.6 Service level management 36
3.7 Knowledge management 36
3.8 The Deming Cycle 36
3.9 Service measurement 36
3.10 IT governance 36
3.11 Frameworks, models, standards and quality systems 36
3.12 CSI inputs and outputs 36
3.1 Continual service improvement approach 36
3.1.1 Business questions for CSI 37
3.2 CSI and organizational change 37
3.3 Ownership 38
3.4 CSI register 38
3.5 External and internal drivers 39
3.6 Service level management 39
3.7 Knowledge management 40
3.8 The Deming Cycle 40
3.9 Service measurement 41
3.9.1 Baselines 41
3.9.2 Why do we measure? 41
3.9.3 The seven-step improvement process 42
3.9.3.1 Which steps support CSI? 43
3.10 IT governance 45
3.11 Frameworks, models, standards and quality systems 46
3.11.1 Which one should I choose? 47
3.12 CSI inputs and outputs 47
4 Continual service improvement processes 49
4.1 The seven-step improvement process 49
4.1 The seven-step improvement process 49

4.1.1 Purpose and objectives 49
4.1.2 Scope 50
4.1.3 Value to business 50
4.1.4 Policies, principles and basic concepts 50
4.1.4.1 Policies 50
4.1.4.2 Principles 52
4.1.4.3 Basic concepts 52
4.1.5 Process activities, methods and techniques 53
4.1.5.1 Step 1 – Identify the strategy for improvement 53
4.1.5.2 Step 2 – Define what you will measure 54
Question: What do you want to measure? 55
Question: What can you actually measure? 56
Question: Where do you actually find the information? 56
4.1.5.3 Step 3 – Gather the data 57
Question: What needs to be gathered? 58
Question: Where do you actually find the information? 59
4.1.5.4 Step 4 – Process the data 62
4.1.5.5 Step 5 – Analyse the information and data 65
Question: What do you actually analyse? 65
4.1.5.6 Step 6 – Present and use the information 68
4.1.5.7 Step 7 – Implement improvement 71
4.1.6 Triggers, inputs, outputs and interfaces 74
4.1.6.1 Interfaces 74
4.1.7 Role of other processes in gathering and processing the data (Steps 3 and 4) 75
4.1.7.1 Service level management 75
4.1.7.2 Availability management and capacity management 76
4.1.7.3 Event management, incident management and service desk 77
4.1.7.4 Information security management 77
4.1.7.5 Financial management for IT services 78
4.1.8 Role of other processes in analysing the data (Step 5) 78
4.1.8.1 Service level management 78
4.1.8.2 Availability management and capacity management 78
4.1.8.3 Incident management and service desk 78
4.1.8.4 Problem management 79
4.1.8.5 Information security management 79
4.1.9 Role of other processes in presenting and using the information (Step 6) 79
4.1.9.1 Service level management 79
4.1.9.2 Availability management and capacity management 79
4.1.9.3 Incident management and service desk 80
4.1.9.4 Problem management 80
4.1.10 Role of other processes in implementing improvement (Step 7) 80
4.1.10.1 Change management 80
4.1.10.2 Service level management 80

4.1.11 Information management 81
4.1.12 Critical success factors and key performance indicators 81
4.1.13 Challenges and risks 82
5 Continual service improvement methods and techniques 82
5.1 Methods and techniques 82
5.2 Assessments 82
5.3 Benchmarking 82
5.4 Service measurement 82
5.5 Metrics 82
5.6 Return on investment 82
5.7 Service reporting 82
5.8 CSI and other service management processes 82
5.9 Summary 82
5.1 Methods and techniques 82
5.1.1 Effort and cost 83
5.1.2 Implementation review and evaluation 83
5.2 Assessments 84
5.2.1 When to assess 85
5.2.2 What to assess and how 85
5.2.3 Advantages and risks of assessments 87
5.2.4 Value of processes versus maturity of processes 89
5.2.5 Gap analysis 90
5.3 Benchmarking 91
5.3.1 Benchmarking procedure 92
5.3.2 Benchmarking costs 92
5.3.3 Value of benchmarking 93
5.3.4 Benchmarking as a lever 93
5.3.5 Benchmarking as a steering instrument 93
5.3.6 Benchmarking categories 93
5.3.7 Benefits 94
5.3.8 Who is involved? 94
5.3.9 What to benchmark? 95
5.3.10 Comparison with industry norms 96
5.3.10.1 Process maturity comparison 97
5.3.10.2 Total cost of ownership 98
5.3.11 Benchmark approach 98
5.4 Service measurement 100
5.4.1 Design and develop a service measurement framework 101
5.4.2 Different levels of measurement and reporting 102
5.4.3 Service management process measurement 104
5.4.4 Creating a measurement framework grid 107
5.5 Metrics 107
5.5.1 How many CSFs and KPIs? 108
5.5.1.1 Qualitative KPIs 109

5.5.1.2 Quantitative KPIs ... 109
5.5.1.3 Is the KPI fit for use? ... 110
5.5.2 Tension metrics ... 110
5.5.3 Goals and metrics ... 111
5.5.3.1 Breaking down goals and metrics ... 111
5.5.3.2 Using organizational metrics ... 112
5.5.4 Interpreting and using metrics ... 113
5.5.5 Using measurement and metrics ... 116
5.5.6 Creating scorecards and reports ... 118
5.5.6.1 Creating scorecards that align to strategies ... 118
5.5.6.2 Creating reports ... 119
5.5.7 Setting targets ... 125
5.5.8 Balanced scorecard ... 126
5.5.8.1 Cascading the balanced scorecard ... 127
5.5.8.2 The balanced scorecard and measurement-based management ... 129
5.5.9 SWOT analysis ... 130
5.5.9.1 Purpose ... 130
5.5.9.2 How to use ... 130
5.5.9.3 Scope, reach and range ... 131
5.5.9.4 Common pitfalls of a SWOT analysis ... 132
5.6 Return on investment ... 132
5.6.1 Creating a return on investment ... 133
5.6.2 Establishing the business case ... 133
5.6.3 Expectations – what's in it for me? ... 135
5.6.4 Business cases in a data-poor environment ... 136
5.6.5 Measuring benefits achieved ... 137
5.7 Service reporting ... 138
5.7.1 Reporting policy and rules ... 138
5.7.2 Right content for the right audience ... 138
5.8 CSI and other service management processes ... 139
5.8.1 Availability management ... 139
5.8.1.1 Component failure impact analysis ... 140
5.8.1.2 Fault tree analysis ... 140
5.8.1.3 Service failure analysis ... 140
5.8.1.4 Technical observation ... 140
5.8.1.5 Expanded incident lifecycle ... 141
5.8.2 Capacity management ... 142
5.8.3 Business capacity management ... 143
5.8.4 Service capacity management ... 143
5.8.5 Component capacity management ... 143
5.8.6 Workload management and demand management ... 146
5.8.7 Iterative activities of capacity management ... 147
5.8.7.1 Trend analysis ... 147
5.8.7.2 Modelling ... 148

5.8.7.3 Analytical modelling 148
5.8.7.4 Simulation modelling 148
5.8.7.5 Baseline models 149
5.8.8 IT service continuity management 149
5.8.8.1 Business continuity management, ITSCM and CSI 150
5.8.9 Problem management 150
5.8.10 Change management, release and deployment management 150
5.8.10.1 Post-implementation review 151
5.8.11 Knowledge management 151
5.8.11.1 Knowledge management concepts 151
5.8.12 Risk management 153
5.8.12.1 Relating management of risk to safety, security and business continuity 154
5.8.12.2 Business perspective on risk management 155
5.8.12.3 Risk profiles and responsibilities 155
5.9 Summary 156
6 Organizing for continual service improvement 156
6.1 Organizational development 156
6.2 Functions 156
6.3 Roles 156
6.4 Customer engagement 157
6.5 Responsibility model – RACI 157
6.6 Competence and training 157
6.1 Organizational development 157
6.2 Functions 157
6.3 Roles 157
6.3.1 Generic service owner role 158
6.3.2 Generic process owner role 160
6.3.3 Generic process manager role 161
6.3.4 Generic process practitioner role 161
6.3.5 CSI manager 161
6.3.6 Seven-step improvement roles 162
6.3.6.1 Seven-step improvement process owner 162
6.3.6.2 Seven-step improvement process manager 163
6.3.6.3 Reporting analyst 163
6.3.6.4 Other roles involved in the seven-step improvement process 164
Step 1 – Identify the strategy for improvement 164
Step 2 – Define what you will measure 165
Step 3 – Gather the data 165
Step 4 – Process the data 166
Step 5 – Analyse the information and data 166
Step 6 – Present and use the information 167
Step 7 – Implement improvement 167
6.3.7 Business relationship manager 168
6.4 Customer engagement 171

6.5 Responsibility model – RACI 172
6.6 Competence and training 173
6.6.1 Competence and skills for service management 173
6.6.2 Competence and skills framework 174
6.6.3 Training 174
7 Technology considerations 175
7.1 Tools to support CSI activities 175
7.2 Summary 175
7.1 Tools to support CSI activities 175
7.1.1 IT service management suites 176
7.1.1.1 Configuration data 177
7.1.1.2 Releases 177
7.1.1.3 Service level management 178
7.1.2 Systems and network management 178
7.1.3 Event management 179
7.1.4 Automated incident/problem resolution 179
7.1.5 Knowledge management 179
7.1.6 Requesting services (service catalogue and workflow) 180
7.1.7 Performance management 180
7.1.8 Application and service performance monitoring 180
7.1.9 Statistical analysis tools 181
7.1.10 Software version control/software configuration management 181
7.1.11 Software test management 181
7.1.12 Information security management 181
7.1.13 Project and portfolio management 181
7.1.14 Financial management for IT services 182
7.1.15 Business intelligence/reporting 182
7.2 Summary 183
8 Implementing continual service improvement 183
8.1 Critical considerations for implementing CSI 183
8.2 Where do I start? 183
8.3 Governance 183
8.4 CSI and organizational change 183
8.5 Communication strategy and plan 183
8.6 Summary 183
8.1 Critical considerations for implementing CSI 184
8.2 Where do I start? 184
8.2.1 Where do I start – the service approach 184
8.2.2 Where do I start – the lifecycle approach 184
8.2.3 Where do I start – the functional group approach 185
8.3 Governance 185
8.3.1 Business drivers 185
8.3.2 Process changes 186
8.4 CSI and organizational change 186

8.4.1 Create a sense of urgency 188
8.4.2 Form a guiding coalition 189
8.4.3 Create a vision 189
8.4.4 Communicate the vision 189
8.4.5 Empower others to act on the vision 190
8.4.6 Plan for and create short-term wins 190
8.4.7 Consolidate improvements and produce more change 190
8.4.8 Institutionalize the change 191
8.4.9 Organization culture 191
8.4.9.1 Key concept 192
8.5 Communication strategy and plan 193
8.5.1 Defining a communication plan 194
8.5.2 Communication transformation 195
8.6 Summary 196
9 Challenges, risks and critical success factors 196
9.1 Challenges 196
9.2 Critical success factors 196
9.3 Risks 196
9.4 Summary 196
9.1 Challenges 197
9.2 Critical success factors 197
9.3 Risks 198
9.4 Summary 198
Afterword 198
Appendix A: Related guidance 199
A.1 ITIL guidance and web services 199
A.2 Quality management system 199
A.3 Risk management 199
A.4 Governance of IT 199
A.5 COBIT 199
A.6 ISO/IEC 20000 service management series 199
A.7 Environmental management and green/sustainable IT 199
A.8 ISO standards and publications for IT 199
A.9 ITIL and the OSI framework 199
A.10 Programme and project management 199
A.11 Organizational change 199
A.12 Skills Framework for the Information Age 199
A.13 Carnegie Mellon: CMMI and eSCM framework 199
A.14 Balanced scorecard 199
A.15 Six Sigma 199
A.1 ITIL guidance and web services 199
A.15 Six Sigma 200
Appendix B: Example of a continual service improvement register 201
Appendix C: Risk assessment and management 203

C.1 Definition of risk and risk management 203
C.2 Management of Risk (M_o_R) 203
C.3 ISO 31000 203
C.4 ISO/IEC 27001 203
C.5 Risk IT 203
Appendix D: Examples of inputs and outputs across the service lifecycle 203

1 Introduction

1.1 Overview
1.2 Context
1.3 ITIL in relation to other publications in the Best Management Practice portfolio
1.4 Why is ITIL so successful?
1.5 Chapter summary

ITIL is part of a suite of best-practice publications for IT service management (ITSM).[1] ITIL provides guidance to service providers on the provision of quality IT services, and on the processes, functions and other capabilities needed to support them. ITIL is used by many hundreds of organizations around the world and offers best-practice guidance applicable to all types of organization that provide services. ITIL is not a standard that has to be followed; it is guidance that should be read and understood, and used to create value for the service provider and its customers. Organizations are encouraged to adopt ITIL best practices and to adapt them to work in their specificenvironments in ways that meet their needs.

ITIL is the most widely recognized framework for ITSM in the world. In the 20 years since it was created, ITIL has evolved and changed its breadth and depth as technologies and business practices have developed. ISO/IEC 20000 provides a formal and universal standard for organizations seeking to have their service management capabilities audited and certified. While ISO/IEC 20000 is a standard to be achieved and maintained, ITIL offers a body of knowledge useful for achieving the standard.

In 2007, the second major refresh of ITIL was published in response to significant advancements in technology and emerging challenges for IT service providers. New models and architectures such as outsourcing, shared services, utility computing, cloud computing, virtualization, web services and mobile commerce have become widespread within IT. The process-based approach of ITIL was augmented with the service lifecycle to address these additional service management challenges. In 2011, as part of its commitment to continual improvement, the Cabinet Office published this update to improve consistency across the core publications.

The ITIL framework is based on the five stages of the service lifecycle as shown in Figure 1.1, with a core publication providing best-practice guidance for each stage. This guidance includes key principles, required processes and activities, organization and roles, technology, associated challenges, critical success factors and risks. The service lifecycle uses a hub-and-spoke design, with service strategy at the hub, and service design, transition and operation as the revolving lifecycle stages or ‘spokes’. Continual service improvement (CSI) surrounds and supports all stages of the service lifecycle. Each stage of the lifecycle exerts influence on the others and relies on them for inputs and feedback. In this way, a constant set of checks and balances throughout the service lifecycle ensures that as business demand changes with business need, the services can adapt and respond effectively.

In addition to the core publications, there is also a complementary set of ITIL publications providing guidance specific to industry sectors, organization types, operating models and technology architectures.

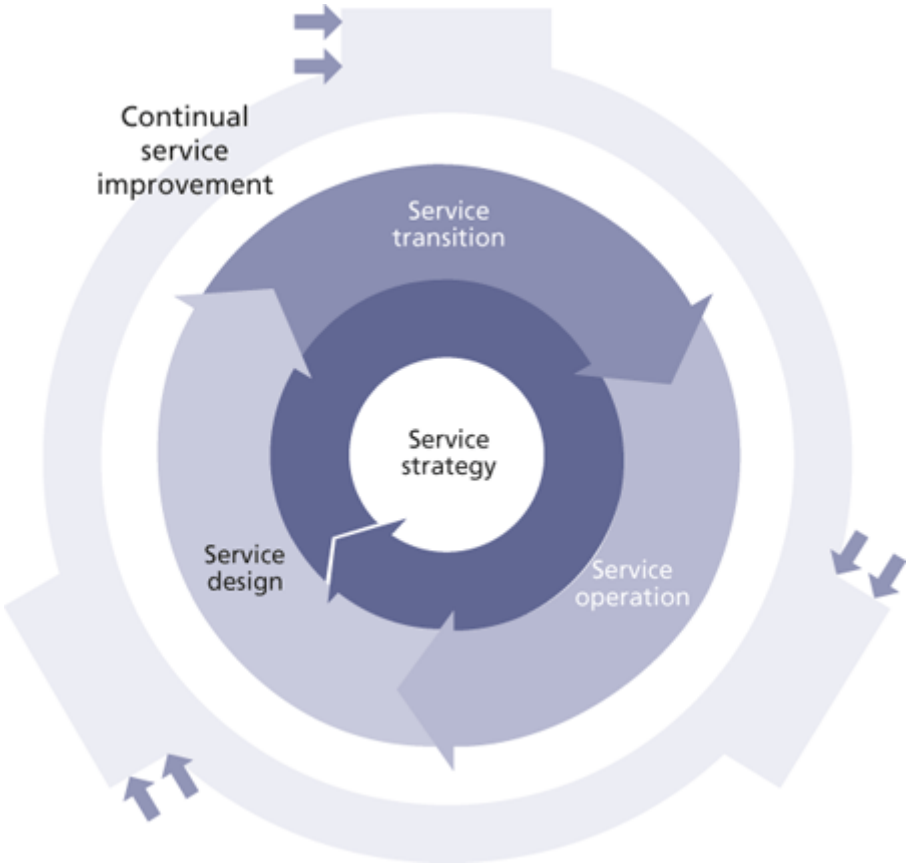


Figure 1.1 The ITIL service lifecycle

1.1 Overview

ITIL Continual Service Improvement provides best-practice guidance for the CSI stage of the ITIL service lifecycle. Although this publication can be read in isolation, it is recommended that it is used in conjunction with the other core ITIL publications.

1.1.1 Purpose and objectives of CSI

The purpose of the CSI stage of the lifecycle is to align IT services with changing business needs by identifying and implementing improvements to IT services that support business processes. These improvement activities support the lifecycle approach through service strategy, service design, service transition and service operation. CSI is always seeking ways to improve service effectiveness, process effectiveness and cost effectiveness.

In order to identify improvement opportunities, the measurement of current performance is an important factor. Consider the following sayings about measurements and management:

You cannot manage what you cannot control.
You cannot control what you cannot measure.
You cannot measure what you cannot define.
If services and processes are not implemented, managed and supported using clearly defined goals, objectives and relevant measurements that lead to actionable improvements, the business will

suffer. Depending upon the criticality of a specific IT service to the business, the organization could lose productive hours, experience higher costs, suffer loss of reputation or, perhaps, even risk business failure. Ultimately it could also lead to loss of customer business. That is why it is critically important to understand what to measure, why it is being measured and what the successful outcome should be.

The objectives of CSI are to:

- Review, analyse, prioritize and make recommendations on improvement opportunities in each lifecycle stage: service strategy, service design, service transition, service operation and CSI itself
- Review and analyse service level achievement
- Identify and implement specific activities to improve IT service quality and improve the efficiency and effectiveness of the enabling processes
- Improve cost effectiveness of delivering IT services without sacrificing customer satisfaction
- Ensure applicable quality management methods are used to support continual improvement activities
- Ensure that processes have clearly defined objectives and measurements that lead to actionable improvements
- Understand what to measure, why it is being measured and what the successful outcome should be.

1.1.2 Scope

ITIL Continual Service Improvement provides guidance in four main areas:

- The overall health of ITSM as a discipline
- The continual alignment of the service portfolio with the current and future business needs
- The maturity and capability of the organization, management, processes and people utilized by the services
- Continual improvement of all aspects of the IT service and the service assets that support them.

To implement CSI successfully it is important to understand the different activities that need to be applied. The following activities support CSI:

- Reviewing management information and trends to ensure that services are meeting agreed service levels
- Reviewing management information and trends to ensure that the output of the enabling processes are achieving the desired results
- Periodically conducting maturity assessments against the process activities and associated roles to demonstrate areas of improvement or, conversely, areas of concern
- Periodically conducting internal audits verifying employee and process compliance
- Reviewing existing deliverables for appropriateness
- Periodically proposing recommendations for improvement opportunities
- Periodically conducting customer satisfaction surveys
- Reviewing business trends and changed priorities, and keeping abreast of business projections
- Conducting external and internal service reviews to identify CSI opportunities

- Measuring and identifying the value created by CSI improvements.

These activities do not happen automatically. They must be owned by individuals within the service provider organization who are empowered to make things happen. They must also be planned and scheduled on an ongoing basis. By default, 'improvement' becomes a process within ITSM with defined activities, inputs, outputs, roles and reporting levels. CSI must ensure that ITSM processes are developed and deployed in support of an end-to-end service management approach to business customers. It is essential to develop an ongoing continual improvement strategy for each of the processes as well as for the services that they support.

The deliverables of CSI must be reviewed on an ongoing basis to verify completeness, functionality and feasibility, and to ensure that they remain relevant and do not become stale and unusable. It is also important to ensure that monitoring of quality indicators and metrics will identify areas for process improvement.

Since any improvement initiative will more than likely necessitate changes, specific improvements will need to follow the defined change management process.

1.1.3 Usage

ITIL Continual Service Improvement provides access to proven best practice based on the skill and knowledge of experienced industry practitioners in adopting a standardized and controlled approach to service management. Although this publication can be used and applied in isolation, it is recommended that it is used in conjunction with the other core ITIL publications. All of the core publications need to be read to fully appreciate and understand the overall lifecycle of services and IT service management.

1.1.4 Value to business

Selecting and adopting the best practice as recommended in this publication will assist organizations in delivering significant benefits. It will help readers to set up CSI and the process that supports it, and to make effective use of the process to facilitate the effective improvement of service quality.

Adopting and implementing standard and consistent approaches for CSI will:

- Lead to a gradual and continual improvement in service quality, where justified
- Ensure that IT services remain continuously aligned to business requirements
- Result in gradual improvements in cost effectiveness through a reduction in costs and/or the capability to handle more work at the same cost
- Use monitoring and reporting to identify opportunities for improvement in all lifecycle stages and in all processes
- Identify opportunities for improvements in organizational structures, resourcing capabilities, partners, technology, staff skills and training, and communications.

1.1.5 Target audience

ITIL Continual Service Improvement is relevant to organizations involved in the development, delivery or support of services, including:

- Service providers, both internal and external
- Organizations that aim to improve services through the effective application of service management and service lifecycle processes to improve their service quality
- Organizations that require a consistent managed approach across all service providers in a supply chain or value network
- Organizations that are going out to tender for their services.

In addition, *ITIL Continual Service Improvement* is relevant to any professional involved in the management of services, particularly:

- IT architects
- IT managers and practitioners
- CSI managers
- Process owners
- IT service owners
- Business relationship managers
- Any practitioner looking to improve their way of working and ultimately reduce costs.

1.2 Context

The context of this publication is the ITIL service lifecycle as shown in Figure 1.1.

The ITIL core consists of five lifecycle publications. Each provides part of the guidance necessary for an integrated approach as required by the ISO/IEC 20000 standardspecification. The five publications are:

- *ITIL Service Strategy*
- *ITIL Service Design*
- *ITIL Service Transition*
- *ITIL Service Operation*
- *ITIL Continual Service Improvement*

Each one addresses capabilities having direct impact on a service provider's performance. The core is expected to provide structure, stability and strength to service management capabilities, with durable principles, methods and tools. This serves to protect investments and provide the necessary basis for measurement, learning and improvement. The introductory guide, *Introduction to the ITIL Service Lifecycle*, provides an overview of the lifecycle stages described in the ITIL core.

ITIL guidance can be adapted to support various business environments and organizational strategies. Complementary ITIL publications provide flexibility to implement the core in a diverse range of environments. Practitioners can select complementary publications as needed to provide traction for the ITIL core in a given context, in much the same way as tyres are selected based on the type of vehicle, purpose and road conditions. This is to increase the durability and portability of knowledge assets and to protect investments in service management capabilities.

1.2.1 Service strategy

At the centre of the service lifecycle is service strategy. Value creation begins here with understanding organizational objectives and customer needs. Every organizational asset including people, processes and products should support the strategy.

ITIL Service Strategy provides guidance on how to view service management not only as an organizational capability but as a strategic asset. It describes the principles underpinning the practice of service management which are useful for developing service management policies, guidelines and processes across the ITIL service lifecycle.

Topics covered in *ITIL Service Strategy* include the development of market spaces, characteristics of internal and external provider types, service assets, the service portfolio and implementation of strategy through the service lifecycle. Business relationship management, demand management, financial management, organizational development and strategic risks are among the other major topics.

Organizations should use *ITIL Service Strategy* to set objectives and expectations of performance towards serving customers and market spaces, and to identify, select and prioritize opportunities. Service strategy is about ensuring that organizations are in a position to handle the costs and risks associated with their service portfolios, and are set up not just for operational effectiveness but for distinctive performance.

Organizations already practising ITIL can use *ITIL Service Strategy* to guide a strategic review of their ITIL-based service management capabilities and to improve the alignment between those capabilities and their business strategies. *ITIL Service Strategy* will encourage readers to stop and think about why something is to be done before thinking of how.

1.2.2 Service design

For services to provide true value to the business, they must be designed with the business objectives in mind. Design encompasses the whole IT organization, for it is the organization as a whole that delivers and supports the services. Service design is the stage in the lifecycle that turns a service strategy into a plan for delivering the business objectives.

ITIL Service Design provides guidance for the design and development of services and service management practices. It covers design principles and methods for converting strategic objectives into portfolios of services and service assets. The scope of *ITIL Service Design* is not limited to new services. It includes the changes and improvements necessary to increase or maintain value to customers over the lifecycle of services, the continuity of services, achievement of service levels, and conformance to standards and regulations. It guides organizations on how to develop design capabilities for service management.

Other topics in *ITIL Service Design* include design coordination, service catalogue management, service level management, availability management, capacity management, IT service continuity management, information security management and supplier management.

1.2.3 Service transition

ITIL Service Transition provides guidance for the development and improvement of capabilities for introducing new and changed services into supported environments. It describes how to transition an

organization from one state to another while controlling risk and supporting organizational knowledge for decision support. It ensures that the value(s) identified in the service strategy, and encoded in service design, are effectively transitioned so that they can be realized in service operation.

ITIL Service Transition describes best practice in transition planning and support, change management, service asset and configuration management, release and deployment management, service validation and testing, change evaluation and knowledge management. It provides guidance on managing the complexity related to changes to services and service management processes, preventing undesired consequences while allowing for innovation.

ITIL Service Transition also introduces the service knowledge management system, which can support organizational learning and help to improve the overall efficiencyand effectiveness of all stages of the service lifecycle. This will enable people to benefit from the knowledge and experience of others, support informed decision-making, and improve the management of services.

1.2.4 Service operation

ITIL Service Operation describes best practice for managing services in supported environments. It includes guidance on achieving effectiveness and efficiency in the delivery and support of services to ensure value for the customer, the users and the service provider.

Strategic objectives are ultimately realized through service operation, therefore making it a critical capability. *ITIL Service Operation* provides guidance on how to maintain stability in service operation, allowing for changes in design, scale, scope and service levels. Organizations are provided with detailed process guidelines, methods and tools for use in two major control perspectives: reactive and proactive. Managers and practitioners are provided with knowledge allowing them to make better decisions in areas such as managing the availability of services, controlling demand, optimizing capacity utilization, scheduling of operations, and avoiding or resolving serviceincidents and managing problems. New models and architectures such as shared services, utility computing, web services and mobile commerce to support service operation are described.

Other topics in *ITIL Service Operation* include event management, incident management, request fulfilment, problem management and access management processes; as well as the service desk, technical management, IT operations management and application management functions.

1.2.5 Continual service improvement

ITIL Continual Service Improvement (this publication) provides guidance on creating and maintaining value for customers through better strategy, design, transition andoperation of services. It combines principles, practices and methods from quality management, change management and capability improvement.

ITIL Continual Service Improvement describes best practice for achieving incremental and large-scale improvements in service quality, operational efficiency andbusiness continuity, and for ensuring that the service portfolio continues to be aligned to business needs. Guidance is provided for linking improvement efforts andoutcomes with service strategy, design, transition and operation. A closed loop feedback system, based on the Plan-Do-Check-Act (PDCA) cycle, is established. Feedback from any

stage of the service lifecycle can be used to identify improvement opportunities for any other stage of the lifecycle.

Other topics in *ITIL Continual Service Improvement* include service measurement, demonstrating value with metrics, developing baselines and maturity assessments.

1.3 ITIL in relation to other publications in the Best Management Practice portfolio

ITIL is part of a portfolio of best-practice publications (known collectively as Best Management Practice or BMP) aimed at helping organizations and individuals manage projects, programmes and services consistently and effectively (see Figure 1.2). ITIL can be used in harmony with other BMP products, and international or internalorganization standards. Where appropriate, BMP guidance is supported by a qualification scheme and accredited training and consultancy services. All BMP guidance is intended to be tailored for use by individual organizations.

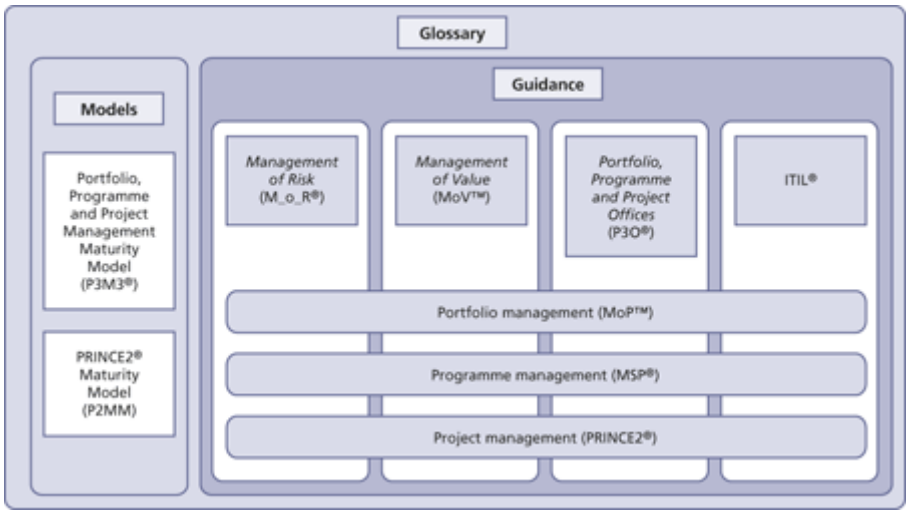


Figure 1.2 ITIL's relationship with other Best Management Practice guides

BMP publications include:

- ***Management of Portfolios*** **(MoP™)** Portfolio management concerns the twin issues of how to do the 'right' projects and programmes in the context of the organization's strategic objectives, and how to do them 'correctly' in terms of achieving delivery and benefits at a collective level. MoP encompasses consideration of the principles upon which effective portfolio management is based; the key practices in the portfolio definition and delivery cycles, including examples of how they have been applied in real life; and guidance on how to implement portfolio management and sustain progress in a wide variety of organizations.

  Office of Government Commerce (2011). *Management of Portfolios*. TSO, London.

- ***Management of Risk*** **(M_o_R®)** M_o_R offers an effective framework for taking informed decisions about the risks that affect performance objectives. The framework allows organizations to

assess risk accurately (selecting the correct responses to threats and opportunities created by uncertainty) and thereby improve their service delivery.

Office of Government Commerce (2010). *Management of Risk: Guidance for Practitioners*. TSO, London.

- ***Management of Value* (MoV™)** MoV provides a cross-sector and universally applicable guide on how to maximize value in a way that takes account of organizations' priorities, differing stakeholders' needs and, at the same time, uses resources as efficiently and effectively as possible. It will help organizations to put in place effective methods to deliver enhanced value across their portfolio, programmes, projects and operational activities to meet the challenges of ever-more competitive and resource-constrained environments.

  Office of Government Commerce (2010). *Management of Value*. TSO, London.

- ***Managing Successful Programmes* (MSP®)** MSP provides a framework to enable the achievement of high-quality change outcomes and benefits that fundamentally affect the way in which organizations work. One of the core themes in MSP is that a programme must add more value than that provided by the sum of its constituentproject and major activities.

  Cabinet Office (2011). *Managing Successful Programmes*. TSO, London.

- ***Managing Successful Projects with PRINCE2*®** PRINCE2 (PRojects IN Controlled Environments, V2) is a structured method to help effective project management via clearly defined products. Key themes that feature throughout PRINCE2 are the dependence on a viable business case confirming the delivery of measurable benefits that are aligned to an organization's objectives and strategy, while ensuring the management of risks, costs and quality.

  Office of Government Commerce (2009). *Managing Successful Projects with PRINCE2*. TSO, London.

- ***Portfolio, Programme and Project Offices* (P3O®)** P3O provides universally applicable guidance, including principles, processes and techniques, to successfully establish, develop and maintain appropriate support structures. These structures will facilitate delivery of business objectives (portfolios), programmes and projects within time, cost, quality and other organizational constraints.

  Office of Government Commerce (2008). *Portfolio, Programme and Project Offices*. TSO, London.

1.4 Why is ITIL so successful?

ITIL embraces a practical approach to service management – do what works. And what works is adapting a common framework of practices that unite all areas of IT service provision towards a single aim – that of delivering value to the business. The following list defines the key characteristics of ITIL that contribute to its global success:

- **Vendor-neutral** ITIL service management practices are applicable in any IT organization because they are not based on any particular technology platform or industry type. ITIL is owned by the UK government and is not tied to any commercial proprietary practice or solution.

- **Non-prescriptive** ITIL offers robust, mature and time-tested practices that have applicability to all types of service organization. It continues to be useful and relevant in public and private sectors, internal and external service providers, small, medium and large enterprises, and within any technical environment. Organizations should adopt ITIL and adapt it to meet the needs of the IT organization and their customers.
- **Best practice** ITIL represents the learning experiences and thought leadership of the world's best-in-class service providers.

ITIL is successful because it describes practices that enable organizations to deliver benefits, return on investment and sustained success. ITIL is adopted by organizations to enable them to:

- Deliver value for customers through services
- Integrate the strategy for services with the business strategy and customer needs
- Measure, monitor and optimize IT services and service provider performance
- Manage the IT investment and budget
- Manage risk
- Manage knowledge
- Manage capabilities and resources to deliver services effectively and efficiently
- Enable adoption of a standard approach to service management across the enterprise
- Change the organizational culture to support the achievement of sustained success
- Improve the interaction and relationship with customers
- Coordinate the delivery of goods and services across the value network
- Optimize and reduce costs.

1.5 Chapter summary

ITIL Continual Service Improvement comprises:

- Chapter 2 Service management as a practice

This chapter explains the concepts of service management and services, and describes how these can be used to create value. It also summarizes a number of generic ITIL concepts that the rest of the publication depends on.

- Chapter 3 Continual service improvement principles

This chapter describes some of the key principles of CSI that will enable service providers to plan and implement best practice in CSI. These principles are the same irrespective of the organization; however, the approach may need to be tailored to circumstances, including the size of the organization, geographic distribution, culture and available resources. It concludes with a table showing the major inputs and outputs for the CSI lifecycle stage.

- Chapter 4 Continual service improvement processes

Chapter 4 sets out the processes and activities on which effective CSI depends and how they integrate with the other stages of the lifecycle.

- Chapter 5 Continual service improvement methods and techniques

  Chapter 5 explores the various methods and techniques for continual improvement. It looks at ways of assessing organizations and explores benchmarking, thebalanced scorecard, the PDCA cycle, and service measurement and reporting.

- Chapter 6 Organizing for continual service improvement

  This chapter identifies the organizational roles and responsibilities that should be considered to manage the CSI lifecycle stage and its related process. These roles are provided as guidelines and can be combined to fit into a variety of organization structures.

- Chapter 7 Technology considerations

  ITIL service management practices gain momentum when the right type of technical automation is applied. This chapter provides recommendations for the use of technology in CSI and the basic requirements a service provider will need to consider when choosing service management tools.

- Chapter 8 Implementing continual service improvement

  For organizations new to ITIL, or those wishing to improve their maturity and service capability, this chapter outlines effective ways to implement the CSI lifecycle stage.

- Chapter 9 Challenges, risks and critical success factors

  It is important for any organization to understand the challenges, risks and critical success factors that could influence their success. This chapter discusses typical examples of these for the CSI lifecycle stage.

- Appendix A Related guidance

  This contains a list of some of the many external methods, practices and frameworks that align well with ITIL best practice. Notes are provided on how they integrate into the ITIL service lifecycle, and when and how they are useful.

- Appendix B Example of a continual service improvement register

  This appendix provides an example of a CSI register.

- Appendix C Risk assessment and management

  This appendix contains basic information about several commonly used approaches to the assessment and management of risk.

- Appendix D Examples of inputs and outputs across the service lifecycle

This appendix identifies some of the major inputs and outputs between each stage of the service lifecycle.

- Abbreviations and glossary

This contains a list of abbreviations and a selected glossary of terms.

2 Service management as a practice

2.1 Services and service management
2.2 Basic concepts
2.3 Governance and management systems
2.4 The service lifecycle

2.1 Services and service management

2.1.1 Services

Services are a means of delivering value to customers by facilitating the outcomes customers want to achieve without the ownership of specific costs and risks. Services facilitate outcomes by enhancing the performance of associated tasks and reducing the effect of constraints. These constraints may include regulation, lack of funding orcapacity, or technology limitations. The end result is an increase in the probability of desired outcomes. While some services enhance performance of tasks, others have a more direct impact – they perform the task itself.

The preceding paragraph is not just a definition, as it is a recurring pattern found in a wide range of services. Patterns are useful for managing complexity, costs, flexibility and variety. They are generic structures useful to make an idea applicable in a wide range of environments and situations. In each instance the pattern is applied with variations that make the idea effective, economical or simply useful in that particular case.

Definition: outcome

The result of carrying out an activity, following a process, or delivering an IT service etc. The term is used to refer to intended results, as well as to actual results.

An outcome-based definition of service moves IT organizations beyond business–IT alignment towards business–IT integration. Internal dialogue and discussion on the meaning of services is an elementary step towards alignment and integration with a customer's business (Figure 2.1). Customer outcomes become the ultimate concern of business relationship managers instead of the gathering of requirements, which is necessary but not sufficient. Requirements are generated for internal coordination and control only after customer outcomes are well understood.

Customers seek outcomes but do not wish to have accountability or ownership of all the associated costs and risks. All services must have a budget when they go liveand this must be managed. The service cost is reflected in financial terms such as return on investment (ROI) and total cost of ownership (TCO). The customer will only be exposed to the overall cost or price of a service, which will include all the provider's costs and risk mitigation measures (and any profit margin if appropriate). The customer can then judge the value of a service based on a comparison of cost or price and reliability with the desired outcome.

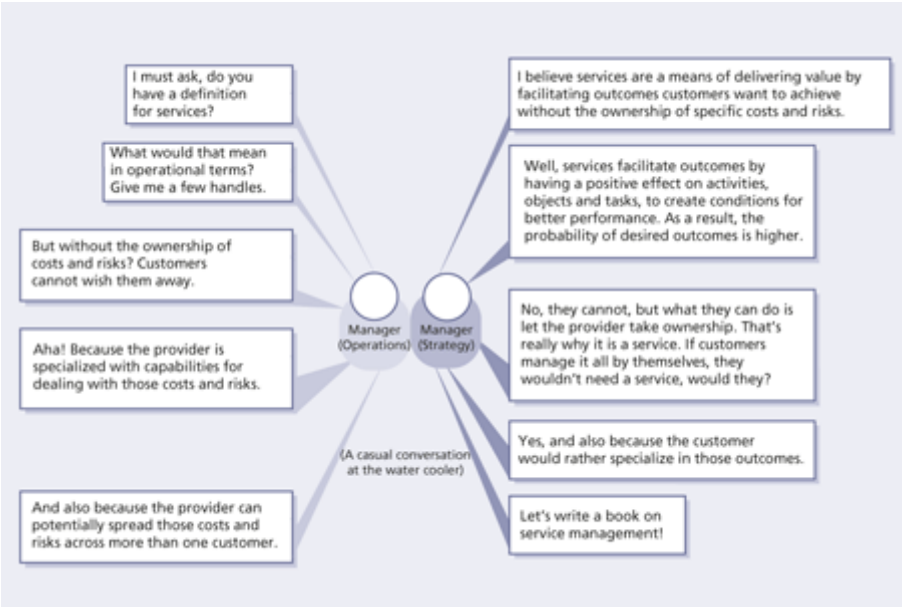


Figure 2.1 Conversation about the definition and meaning of services

Definitions

Service: A means of delivering value to customers by facilitating outcomes customers want to achieve without the ownership of specific costs and risks.

IT service: A service provided by an IT service provider. An IT service is made up of a combination of information technology, people and processes. A customer-facing IT service directly supports the business processes of one or more customers and its service level targets should be defined in a service level agreement. Other IT services, called supporting services, are not directly used by the business but are required by the service provider to deliver customer-facing services.

Customer satisfaction is also important. Customers need to be satisfied with the level of service and feel confident in the ability of the service provider to continue providing that level of service – or even improving it over time. The difficulty is that customer expectations keep shifting, and a service provider that does not track this will soon find itself losing business. *ITIL Service Strategy* is helpful in understanding how this happens, and how a service provider can adapt its services to meet the changing customer environment.

Services can be discussed in terms of how they relate to one another and their customers, and can be classified as core, enabling or enhancing.

Core services deliver the basic outcomes desired by one or more customers. They represent the value that the customer wants and for which they are willing to pay. Core services anchor the value proposition for the customer and provide the basis for their continued utilization and satisfaction.

Enabling services are services that are needed in order for a core service to be delivered. Enabling services may or may not be visible to the customer, but the customer does not perceive them as services in their own right. They are 'basic factors' which enable the customer to receive the 'real' (core) service.

Enhancing services are services that are added to a core service to make it more exciting or enticing to the customer. Enhancing services are not essential to the delivery of a core service, and are added to a core service as 'excitement' factors, which will encourage customers to use the core service more (or to choose the core service provided by one company over those of its competitors).

Services may be as simple as allowing a user to complete a single transaction, but most services are complex. They consist of a range of deliverables and functionality. If each individual aspect of these complex services were defined independently, the service provider would soon find it impossible to track and record all services.

Most service providers will follow a strategy where they can deliver a set of more generic services to a broad range of customers, thus achieving economies of scale and competing on the basis of price and a certain amount of flexibility. One way of achieving this is by using service packages. A service package is a collection of two or more services that have been combined to offer a solution to a specific type of customer need or to underpin specific business outcomes. A service package can consist of a combination of core services, enabling services and enhancing services.

Where a service or service package needs to be differentiated for different types of customer, one or more components of the package can be changed, or offered at different levels of utility and warranty, to create service options. These different service options can then be offered to customers and are sometimes called service level packages.

2.1.2 Service management

When we turn on a water tap, we expect to see water flow from it. When we turn on a light switch, we expect to see light fill the room. Not so many years ago, these very basic things were not as reliable as they are today. We know instinctively that the advances in technology have made them reliable enough to be considered a utility. But it isn't just the technology that makes the services reliable. It is how they are managed.

The use of IT today has become the utility of business. Business today wants IT services that behave like other utilities such as water, electricity or the telephone. Simply having the best technology will not ensure that IT provides utility-like reliability. Professional, responsive, value-driven service management is what brings this quality of service to the business.

Service management is a set of specialized organizational capabilities for providing value to customers in the form of services. The more mature a service provider's capabilities are, the greater is their ability to consistently produce quality services that meet the needs of the customer in a timely and cost-effective manner. The act of transforming capabilities and resources into valuable services is at the core of service management. Without these capabilities, a service organization is merely a bundle of resources that by itself has relatively low intrinsic value for customers.

Definitions

Service management: A set of specialized organizational capabilities for providing value to customers in the form of services.

Service provider: An organization supplying services to one or more internal or external customers.

Organizational capabilities are shaped by the challenges they are expected to overcome. An example of this is provided by Toyota in the 1950s when it developed unique capabilities to overcome the challenge of smaller scale and financial capital compared to its American rivals. Toyota developed new capabilities in production engineering, operations management and managing suppliers to compensate for its inability to afford large inventories, make components, produce raw materials or own the companies that produced them (Magretta, 2002).[2]

Service management capabilities are similarly influenced by the following challenges that distinguish services from other systems of value creation, such as manufacturing, mining and agriculture:

- Intangible nature of the output and intermediate products of service processes: they are difficult to measure, control and validate (or prove)
- Demand is tightly coupled with the customer's assets: users and other customer assets such as processes, applications, documents and transactions arrive with demand and stimulate service production
- High level of contact for producers and consumers of services: there is little or no buffer between the service provider's creation of the service and the customer's consumption of that service
- The perishable nature of service output and service capacity: there is value for the customer from assurance on the continued supply of consistent quality. Providers need to secure a steady supply of demand from customers.

Service management is more than just a set of capabilities. It is also a professional practice supported by an extensive body of knowledge, experience and skills. A global community of individuals and organizations in the public and private sectors fosters its growth and maturity. Formal schemes exist for the education, training andcertification of practising organizations, and individuals influence its quality. Industry best practices, academic research and formal standards contribute to and draw from its intellectual capital.

The origins of service management are in traditional service businesses such as airlines, banks, hotels and phone companies. Its practice has grown with the adoption by IT organizations of a service-oriented approach to managing IT applications, infrastructure and processes. Solutions to business problems and support for business models, strategies and operations are increasingly in the form of services. The popularity of shared services and outsourcing has contributed to the increase in the number of organizations that behave as service providers, including internal IT organizations. This in turn has strengthened the practice of service management while at the same time imposed greater challenges.

2.1.3 IT service management

Information technology (IT) is a commonly used term that changes meaning depending on the different perspectives that a business organization or people may have of it. A key challenge is to recognize and balance these perspectives when communicating the value of IT service management (ITSM) and understanding the context for how the business sees the IT organization. Some of these meanings are:

- IT is a collection of systems, applications and infrastructures which are components or sub-assemblies of a larger product. They enable or are embedded in processes and services.

- IT is an organization with its own set of capabilities and resources. IT organizations can be of various types such as business functions, shared services units and enterprise-level core units.
- IT is a category of services utilized by business. The services are typically IT applications and infrastructure that are packaged and offered by internal IT organizations or external service providers. IT costs are treated as business expenses.
- IT is a category of business assets that provide a stream of benefits for their owners, including, but not limited to, revenue, income and profit. IT costs are treated as investments.

Every IT organization should act as a service provider, using the principles of service management to ensure that they deliver the outcomes required by their customers.

Definitions

IT service management (ITSM): The implementation and management of quality IT services that meet the needs of the business. IT service management is performed by IT service providers through an appropriate mix of people, process and information technology.

IT service provider: A service provider that provides IT services to internal or external customers.

ITSM must be carried out effectively and efficiently. Managing IT from the business perspective enables organizational high performance and value creation.

A good relationship between an IT service provider and its customers relies on the customer receiving an IT service that meets its needs, at an acceptable level of performance and at a cost that the customer can afford. The IT service provider needs to work out how to achieve a balance between these three areas, and communicate with the customer if there is anything which prevents it from being able to deliver the required IT service at the agreed level of performance or price.

A service level agreement (SLA) is used to document agreements between an IT service provider and a customer. An SLA describes the IT service, documents service level targets, and specifies the responsibilities of the IT service provider and the customer. A single agreement may cover multiple IT services or multiple customers.

2.1.4 Service providers

There are three main types of service provider. While most aspects of service management apply equally to all types of service provider, other aspects such as customers, contracts, competition, market spaces, revenue and strategy take on different meanings depending on the specific type. The three types are:

- **Type I – internal service provider** An internal service provider that is embedded within a business unit. There may be several Type I service providers within an organization.
- **Type II – shared services unit** An internal service provider that provides shared IT services to more than one business unit.
- **Type III – external service provider** A service provider that provides IT services to external customers.

ITSM concepts are often described in the context of only one of these types and as if only one type of IT service provider exists or is used by a given organization. In reality most organizations have a combination of IT service providers. In a single organization it is possible that some IT units are

dedicated to a single business unit, others provide shared services, and yet others have been outsourced or depend on external service providers.

Many IT organizations who traditionally provide services to internal customers find that they are dealing directly with external users because of the online services that they provide. *ITIL Service Strategy* provides guidance on how the IT organization interacts with these users, and who owns and manages the relationship with them.

2.1.5 Stakeholders in service management

Stakeholders have an interest in an organization, project or service etc. and may be interested in the activities, targets, resources or deliverables from service management. Examples include organizations, service providers, customers, consumers, users, partners, employees, shareholders, owners and suppliers. The term 'organization' is used to define a company, legal entity or other institution. It is also used to refer to any entity that has people, resources and budgets – for example, a project or business.

Within the service provider organization there are many different stakeholders including the functions, groups and teams that deliver the services. There are also many stakeholders external to the service provider organization, for example:

- **Customers** Those who buy goods or services. The customer of an IT service provider is the person or group who defines and agrees the service level targets. This term is also sometimes used informally to mean user – for example, 'This is a customer-focused organization.'
- **Users** Those who use the service on a day-to-day basis. Users are distinct from customers, as some customers do not use the IT service directly.
- **Suppliers** Third parties responsible for supplying goods or services that are required to deliver IT services. Examples of suppliers include commodity hardware and software vendors, network and telecom providers, and outsourcing organizations.

There is a difference between customers who work in the same organization as the IT service provider, and customers who work for other organizations. They are distinguished as follows:

- **Internal customers** These are customers who work for the same business as the IT service provider. For example, the marketing department is an internal customerof the IT organization because it uses IT services. The head of marketing and the chief information officer both report to the chief executive officer. If IT charges for its services, the money paid is an internal transaction in the organization's accounting system, not real revenue.
- **External customers** These are customers who work for a different business from the IT service provider. External customers typically purchase services from the service provider by means of a legally binding contract or agreement.

2.1.6 Utility and warranty

The value of a service can be considered to be the level to which that service meets a customer's expectations. It is often measured by how much the customer is willing to pay for the service, rather than the cost to the service provider of providing the service or any other intrinsic attribute of the service itself.

Unlike products, services do not have much intrinsic value. The value of a service comes from what it enables someone to do. The value of a service is not determined by the provider, but by the person who receives it – because they decide what they will do with the service, and what type of return they will achieve by using the service. Services contribute value to an organization only when their value is perceived to be higher than the cost of obtaining the service.

From the customer's perspective, value consists of achieving business objectives. The value of a service is created by combining two primary elements: utility (fitness for purpose) and warranty (fitness for use). These two elements work together to achieve the desired outcomes upon which the customer and the business base their perceptions of a service.

Utility is the functionality offered by a product or service to meet a particular need. Utility can be summarized as 'what the service does' and can be used to determine whether a service is able to meet its required outcomes or is 'fit for purpose'. Utility refers to those aspects of a service that contribute to tasks associated with achieving outcomes. For example, a service that enables a business unit to process orders should allow sales people to access customer details, stock availability, shipping information etc. Any aspect of the service that improves the ability of sales people to improve the performance of the task of processing sales orders would be considered utility. Utility can therefore represent any attribute of a service that removes, or reduces the effect of, constraints on the performance of a task.

Warranty is an assurance that a product or service will meet its agreed requirements. This may be a formal agreement such as a service level agreement or contract, or a marketing message or brand image. Warranty refers to the ability of a service to be available when needed, to provide the required capacity, and to provide the requiredreliability in terms of continuity and security. Warranty can be summarized as 'how the service is delivered', and can be used to determine whether a service is 'fit for use'. For example, any aspect of the service that increases the availability or speed of the service would be considered warranty. Warranty can therefore represent any attribute of a service that increases the potential of the business to be able to perform a task. Warranty refers to any means by which utility is made available to the users.

Utility is *what* the service does, and warranty is *how* it is delivered.

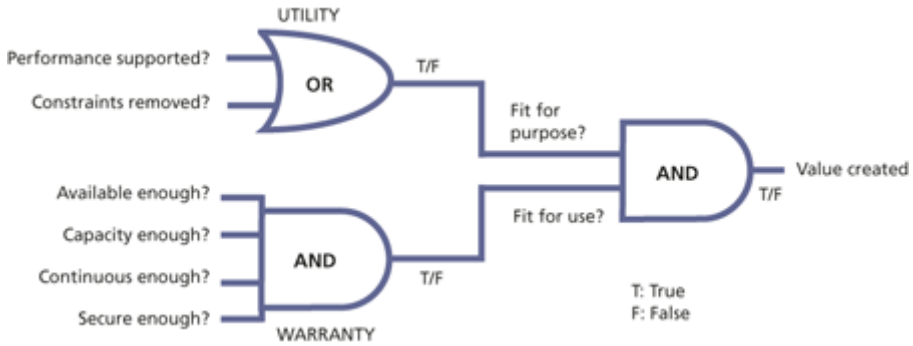


Figure 2.2 Logic of value creation through services

Customers cannot benefit from something that is fit for purpose but not fit for use, and vice versa. The value of a service is therefore only delivered when both utility and warranty are designed and delivered. Figure 2.2 illustrates the logic that a service has to have both utility and warranty to create value. Utility is used to improve theperformance of the tasks required to achieve an outcome, or to remove constraints that prevent the task from being performed adequately (or both). Warranty requires the service to be available, continuous and secure and to have sufficient capacity for the service to perform at the required level. If the service is both fit for purpose and fit for use, it will create value.

It should be noted that the elements of warranty in Figure 2.2 are not exclusive. It is possible to define other components of warranty, such as usability, which refers to how easy it is for the user to access and use the features of the service to achieve the desired outcomes.

The warranty aspect of the service needs to be designed at the same time as the utility aspect in order to deliver the required value to the business. Attempts to design warranty aspects after a service has been deployed can be expensive and disruptive.

Information about the desired business outcomes, opportunities, customers, utility and warranty of the service is used to develop the definition of a service. Using an outcome-based definition helps to ensure that managers plan and execute all aspects of service management from the perspective of what is valuable to the customer.

2.1.7 Best practices in the public domain

Organizations benchmark themselves against peers and seek to close gaps in capabilities. This enables them to become more competitive by improving their ability to deliver quality services that meet the needs of their customers at a price their customers can afford. One way to close such gaps is the adoption of best practices in wide industry use. There are several sources for best practice including public frameworks, standards and the proprietary knowledge of organizations and individuals (Figure 2.3). ITIL is the most widely recognized and trusted source of best-practice guidance in the area of ITSM.

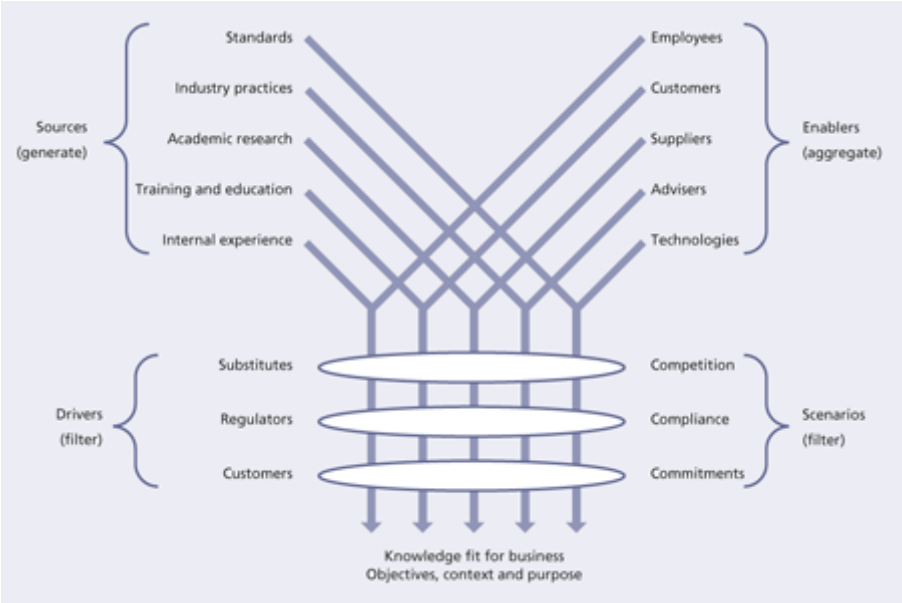


Figure 2.3 Sources of service management best practice

Public frameworks and standards are attractive when compared with proprietary knowledge for the following reasons:

- Proprietary knowledge is deeply embedded in organizations and therefore difficult to adopt, replicate or even transfer with the cooperation of the owners. Such knowledge is often in the form of tacit knowledge which is inextricable and poorly documented.
- Proprietary knowledge is customized for the local context and the specific needs of the business to the point of being idiosyncratic. Unless the recipients of such knowledge have matching circumstances, the knowledge may not be as effective in use.
- Owners of proprietary knowledge expect to be rewarded for their investments. They may make such knowledge available only under commercial terms through purchases and licensing agreements.
- Publicly available frameworks and standards such as ITIL, LEAN, Six Sigma, COBIT, CMMI, PRINCE2, PMBOK®, ISO 9000, ISO/IEC 20000 and ISO/IEC 27001 are validated across a diverse set of environments and situations rather than the limited experience of a single organization. They are subject to broad review across multiple organizations and disciplines, and vetted by diverse sets of partners, suppliers and competitors.
- The knowledge of public frameworks is more likely to be widely distributed among a large community of professionals through publicly available training andcertification. It is easier for organizations to acquire such knowledge through the labour market.

Ignoring public frameworks and standards can needlessly place an organization at a disadvantage. Organizations should cultivate their own proprietary knowledge on top of a body of knowledge based on public frameworks and standards. Collaboration and coordination across organizations become easier on the basis of sharedpractices and standards. Further information on best practice in the public domain is provided in Appendix A.

2.2 Basic concepts

2.2.1 Assets, resources and capabilities

The service relationship between service providers and their customers revolves around the use of assets – both those of the service provider and those of the customer. Each relationship involves an interaction between the assets of each party.

Many customers use the service they receive to build and deliver services or products of their own and then deliver them on to their own customers. In these cases, what the service provider considers to be the customer asset would be considered to be a service asset by their customer.

Without customer assets, there is no basis for defining the value of a service. The performance of customer assets is therefore a primary concern for service management.

Definitions

Asset: Any resource or capability.

Customer asset: Any resource or capability used by a customer to achieve a business outcome.

Service asset: Any resource or capability used by a service provider to deliver services to a customer.

There are two types of asset used by both service providers and customers – resources and capabilities. Organizations use them to create value in the form of goods and services. Resources are direct inputs for

production. Capabilities represent an organization's ability to coordinate, control and deploy resources to produce value. Capabilities are typically experience-driven, knowledge-intensive, information-based and firmly embedded within an organization's people, systems, processes and technologies. It is relatively easy to acquire resources compared to capabilities (see Figure 2.4 for examples of capabilities and resources).

Service providers need to develop distinctive capabilities to retain customers with value propositions that are hard for competitors to duplicate. For example, two service providers may have similar resources such as applications, infrastructure and access to finance. Their capabilities, however, differ in terms of management systems, organization structure, processes and knowledge assets. This difference is reflected in actual performance.

Capabilities by themselves cannot produce value without adequate and appropriate resources. The productive capacity of a service provider is dependent on theresources under its control. Capabilities are used to develop, deploy and coordinate this productive capacity. For example, capabilities such as capacity management andavailability management are used to manage the performance and utilization of processes, applications and infrastructure, ensuring service levels are effectively delivered.

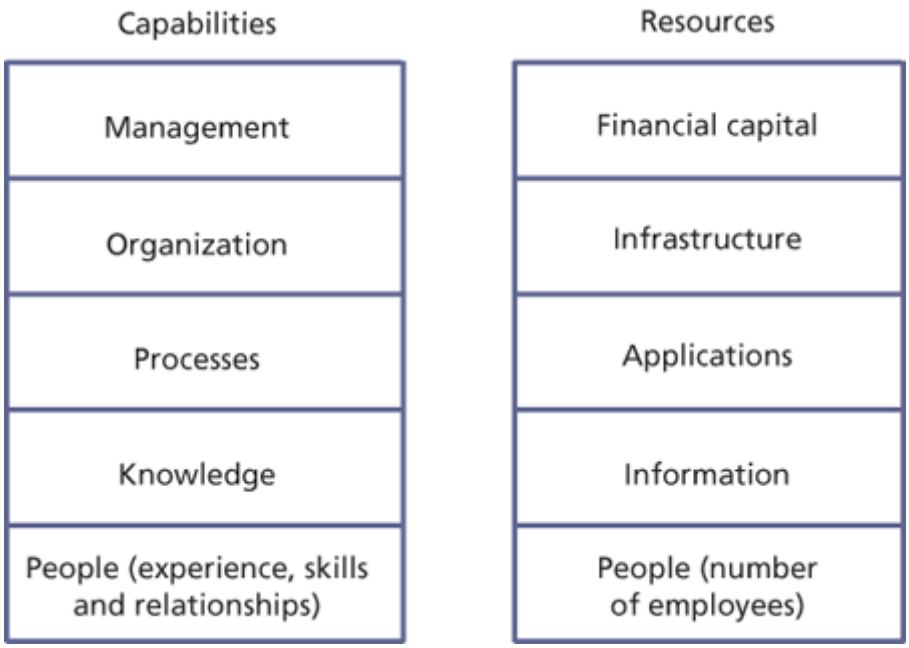


Figure 2.4 Examples of capabilities and resources

2.2.2 Processes

Definition: process

A process is a structured set of activities designed to accomplish a specific objective. A process takes one or more defined inputs and turns them into defined outputs.

Processes define actions, dependencies and sequence. Well-defined processes can improve productivity within and across organizations and functions. Process characteristics include:

- **Measurability** We are able to measure the process in a relevant manner. It is performance-driven. Managers want to measure cost, quality and other variables while practitioners are concerned with duration and productivity.
- **Specific results** The reason a process exists is to deliver a specific result. This result must be individually identifiable and countable.
- **Customers** Every process delivers its primary results to a customer or stakeholder. Customers may be internal or external to the organization, but the process must meet their expectations.
- **Responsiveness to specific triggers** While a process may be ongoing or iterative, it should be traceable to a specific trigger.

A process is organized around a set of objectives. The main outputs from the process should be driven by the objectives and should include process measurements (metrics), reports and process improvement.

The output produced by a process has to conform to operational norms that are derived from business objectives. If products conform to the set norm, the process can be considered effective (because it can be repeated, measured and managed, and achieves the required outcome). If the activities of the process are carried out with a minimum use of resources, the process can also be considered efficient.

Inputs are data or information used by the process and may be the output from another process.

A process, or an activity within a process, is initiated by a trigger. A trigger may be the arrival of an input or other event. For example, the failure of a server may trigger theevent management and incident management processes.

A process may include any of the roles, responsibilities, tools and management controls required to deliver the outputs reliably. A process may define policies, standards,guidelines, activities and work instructions if they are needed.

Processes, once defined, should be documented and controlled. Once under control, they can be repeated and managed. Process measurement and metrics can be built into the process to control and improve the process as illustrated in Figure 2.5. Process analysis, results and metrics should be incorporated in regular management reports and process improvements.

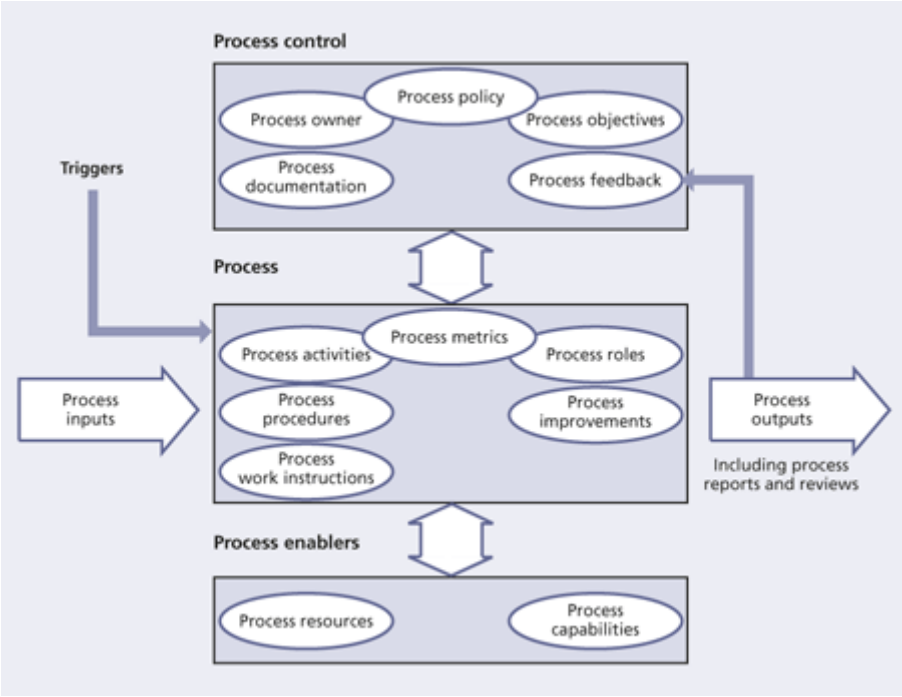


Figure 2.5 Process model

2.2.3 Organizing for service management

There is no single best way to organize, and best practices described in ITIL need to be tailored to suit individual organizations and situations. Any changes made will need to take into account resource constraints and the size, nature and needs of the business and customers. The starting point for organizational design is strategy. Organizational development for service management is described in more detail in *ITIL Service Strategy* Chapter 6.

2.2.3.1 Functions

A function is a team or group of people and the tools or other resources they use to carry out one or more processes or activities. In larger organizations, a function may be broken out and performed by several departments, teams and groups, or it may be embodied within a single organizational unit (e.g. the service desk). In smaller organizations, one person or group can perform multiple functions – for example, a technical management department could also incorporate the service desk function.

For the service lifecycle to be successful, an organization will need to clearly define the roles and responsibilities required to undertake the processes and activities involved in each lifecycle stage. These roles will need to be assigned to individuals, and an appropriate organization structure of teams, groups or functions will need to be established and managed. These are defined as follows:

- **Group** A group is a number of people who are similar in some way. In ITIL, groups refer to people who perform similar activities – even though they may work on different technologies or report into different organizational structures or even different companies. Groups are usually not formal organizational structures, but are very useful in defining common processes across the organization – for example, ensuring that all people who resolve incidents complete the incident record in the same way.

- **Team** A team is a more formal type of group. These are people who work together to achieve a common objective, but not necessarily in the same organizational structure. Team members can be co-located, or work in multiple locations and operate virtually. Teams are useful for collaboration, or for dealing with a situation of a temporary or transitional nature. Examples of teams include project teams, application development teams (often consisting of people from several different business units) and incident or problem resolution teams.
- **Department** Departments are formal organizational structures which exist to perform a specific set of defined activities on an ongoing basis. Departments have a hierarchical reporting structure with managers who are usually responsible for the execution of the activities and also for day-to-day management of the staff in the department.
- **Division** A division refers to a number of departments that have been grouped together, often by geography or product line. A division is normally self-contained.

ITIL Service Operation describes the following functions in detail:

- **Service desk** The single point of contact for users when there is a service disruption, for service requests, or even for some categories of request for change. Theservice desk provides a point of communication to users and a point of coordination for several IT groups and processes.
- **Technical management** Provides detailed technical skills and resources needed to support the ongoing operation of IT services and the management of the IT infrastructure. Technical management also plays an important role in the design, testing, release and improvement of IT services.
- **IT operations management** Executes the daily operational activities needed to manage IT services and the supporting IT infrastructure. This is done according to theperformance standards defined during service design. IT operations management has two sub-functions that are generally organizationally distinct. These are IToperations control and facilities management.
- **Application management** Is responsible for managing applications throughout their lifecycle. The application management function supports and maintains operational applications and also plays an important role in the design, testing and improvement of applications that form part of IT services.

The other core ITIL publications do not define any functions in detail, but they do rely on the technical and application management functions described in *ITIL Service Operation*. Technical and application management provide the technical resources and expertise to manage the whole service lifecycle, and practitioner roles within a particular lifecycle stage may be performed by members of these functions.

2.2.3.2 Roles

A number of roles need to be performed during the service lifecycle. The core ITIL publications provide guidelines and examples of role descriptions. These are not exhaustive or prescriptive, and in many cases roles will need to be combined or separated. Organizations should take care to apply this guidance in a way that suits their own structure and objectives.

Definition: role

A role is a set of responsibilities, activities and authorities granted to a person or team. A role is defined in a process or function. One person or team may have multiple roles – for example, the roles of configuration manager and change manager may be carried out by a single person.

Roles are often confused with job titles but it is important to realize that they are not the same. Each organization will define appropriate job titles and job descriptions which suit their needs, and individuals holding these job titles can perform one or more of the required roles.

It should also be recognized that a person may, as part of their job assignment, perform a single task that represents participation in more than one process. For example, a technical analyst who submits a request for change (RFC) to add memory to a server to resolve a performance problem is participating in activities of thechange management process at the same time as taking part in activities of the capacity management and problem management processes.

See Chapter 6 for more details about the roles and responsibilities described in *ITIL Continual Service Improvement*.

2.2.3.3 Organizational culture and behaviour

Organizational culture is the set of shared values and norms that control the service provider's interactions with all stakeholders, including customers, users, suppliers, internal staff etc. An organization's values are desired modes of behaviour that affect its culture. Examples of organizational values include high standards, customer care, respecting tradition and authority, acting cautiously and conservatively, and being frugal.

High-performing service providers continually align the value network for efficiency and effectiveness. Culture through the value network is transmitted to staff through socialization, training programmes, stories, ceremonies and language.

Constraints such as governance, capabilities, standards, resources, values and ethics play a significant role in organizational culture and behaviour. Organizational culture can also be affected by structure or management styles resulting in a positive or negative impact on performance. Organizational structures and management styles contribute to the behaviour of people, process, technology and partners. These are important aspects in adopting service management practices and ITIL.

Change related to service management programmes will affect organizational culture and it is important to prepare people with effective communication plans, training, policies and procedures to achieve the desired performance outcomes. Establishing cultural change is also an important factor for collaborative working between the many different people involved in service management. Managing people through service transitions is discussed at more length in Chapter 5 of *ITIL Service Transition*.

2.2.4 The service portfolio

The service portfolio is the complete set of services that is managed by a service provider and it represents the service provider's commitments and investments across all customers and market spaces. It also represents present contractual commitments, new service development, and ongoing service improvement plans initiated bycontinual service improvement. The portfolio may include third-party services, which are an integral part of service offerings to customers.

The service portfolio represents all the resources presently engaged or being released in various stages of the service lifecycle. It is a database or structured document in three parts:

- **Service pipeline** All services that are under consideration or development, but are not yet available to customers. It includes major investment opportunities that have to be traced to the delivery of services, and the value that will be realized. The service pipeline provides a business view of possible future services and is part of the service portfolio that is not normally published to customers.
- **Service catalogue** All live IT services, including those available for deployment. It is the only part of the service portfolio published to customers, and is used to support the sale and delivery of IT services. It includes a customer-facing view (or views) of the IT services in use, how they are intended to be used, the business processes they enable, and the levels and quality of service the customer can expect for each service. The service catalogue also includes information aboutsupporting services required by the service provider to deliver customer-facing services. Information about services can only enter the service catalogue after due diligence has been performed on related costs and risks.
- **Retired services** All services that have been phased out or retired. Retired services are not available to new customers or contracts unless a special business caseis made.

Service providers often find it useful to distinguish customer-facing services from supporting services:

- **Customer-facing services** IT services that are visible to the customer. These are normally services that support the customer's business processes and facilitate one or more outcomes desired by the customer.
- **Supporting services** IT services that support or 'underpin' the customer-facing services. These are typically invisible to the customer, but are essential to the delivery of customer-facing IT services.

Figure 2.6 illustrates the components of the service portfolio, which are discussed in detail in *ITIL Service Strategy*. These are important components of the service knowledge management system (SKMS) described in section 2.2.5.

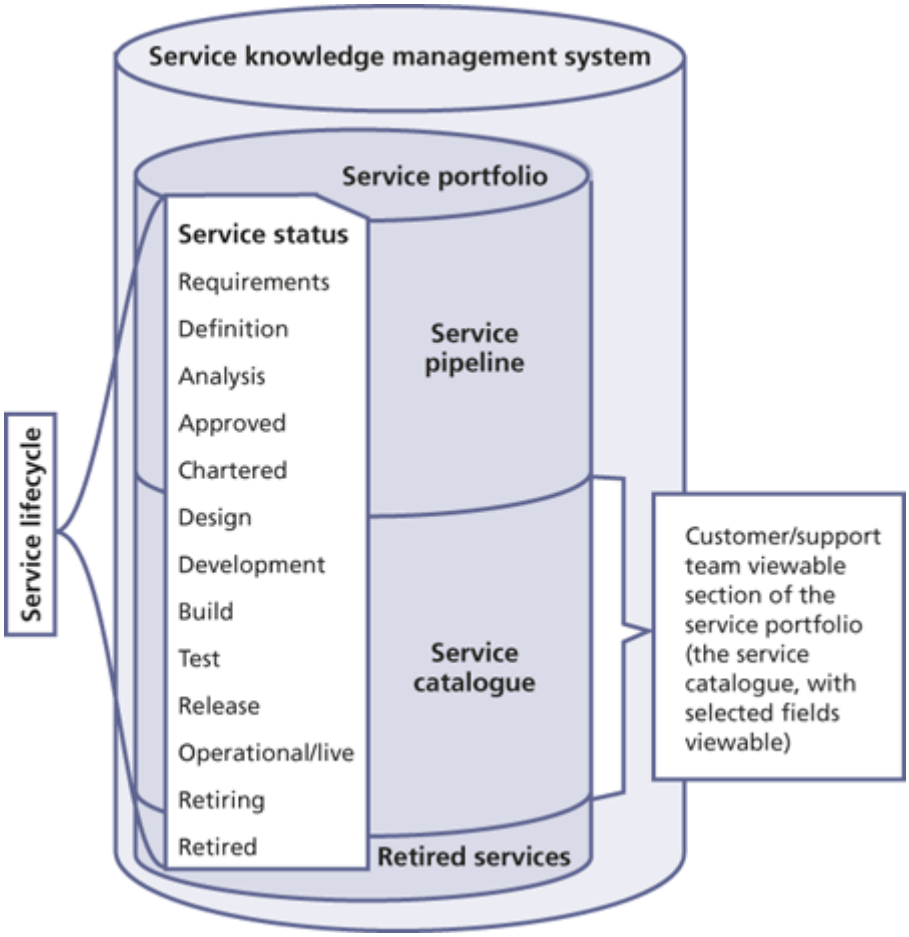


Figure 2.6 The service portfolio and its contents

2.2.5 Knowledge management and the SKMS

Quality knowledge and information enable people to perform process activities and support the flow of information between service lifecycle stages and processes. Understanding, defining, establishing and maintaining information is a responsibility of the knowledge management process.

Implementing an SKMS enables effective decision support and reduces the risks that arise from a lack of proper mechanisms. However, implementing an SKMS can involve a large investment in tools to store and manage data, information and knowledge. Every organization will start this work in a different place, and have their ownvision of where they want to be, so there is no simple answer to the question 'What tools and systems are needed to support knowledge management?' Data, information and knowledge need to be interrelated across the organization. A document management system and/or a configuration management system (CMS) can be used as a foundation for implementation of the SKMS.

Figure 2.7 illustrates an architecture for service knowledge management that has four layers including examples of possible content at each layer. These are:

- **Presentation layer** Enables searching, browsing, retrieving, updating, subscribing and collaboration. The different views onto the other layers are suitable for different audiences. Each view

should be protected to ensure that only authorized people can see or modify the underlying knowledge, information and data.

- **Knowledge processing layer** Is where the information is converted into useful knowledge which enables decision-making.
- **Information integration layer** Provides integrated information that may be gathered from data in multiple sources in the data layer.
- **Data layer** Includes tools for data discovery and data collection, and data items in unstructured and structured forms.

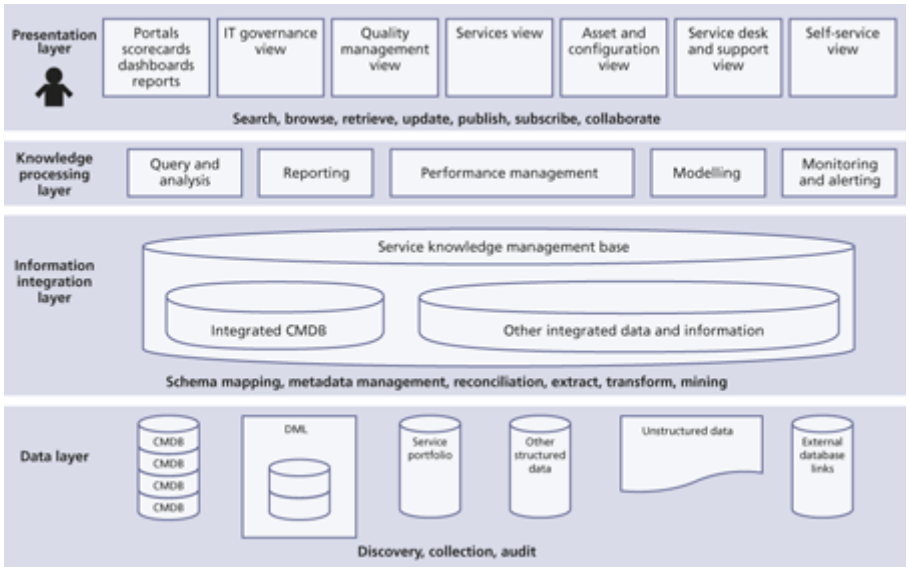


Figure 2.7 Architectural layers of an SKMS

In practice, an SKMS is likely to consist of multiple tools and repositories. For example, there may be a tool that provides all four layers for the support of different processes or combinations of processes. Various tools providing a range of perspectives will be used by different stakeholders to access this common repository for collaborative decision support.

This architecture is applicable for many of the management information systems in ITIL. A primary component of the SKMS is the service portfolio, covered in section 2.2.4. Other examples include the CMS, the availability management information system (AMIS) and the capacity management information system (CMIS).

2.3 Governance and management systems

2.3.1 Governance

Governance is the single overarching area that ties IT and the business together, and services are one way of ensuring that the organization is able to execute that governance. Governance is what defines the common directions, policies and rules that both the business and IT use to conduct business.

Many ITSM strategies fail because they try to build a structure or processes according to how they would like the organization to work instead of working within the existing governance structures.

Definition: governance

Ensures that policies and strategy are actually implemented, and that required processes are correctly followed. Governance includes defining roles and responsibilities, measuring and reporting, and taking actions to resolve any issues identified.

Governance works to apply a consistently managed approach at all levels of the organization – first by ensuring a clear strategy is set, then by defining the policies whereby the strategy will be achieved. The policies also define boundaries, or what the organization may not do as part of its operations.

Governance needs to be able to evaluate, direct and monitor the strategy, policies and plans. Further information on governance and service management is provided in Chapter 5 of *ITIL Service Strategy*. The international standard for corporate governance of IT is ISO/IEC 38500, described in Appendix A.

2.3.2 Management systems

A system is a number of related things that work together to achieve an overall objective. Systems should be self-regulating for agility and timeliness. In order to accomplish this, the relationships within the system must influence one another for the sake of the whole. Key components of the system are the structure and processes that work together.

A systems approach to service management ensures learning and improvement through a big-picture view of services and service management. It extends the management horizon and provides a sustainable long-term approach.

By understanding the system structure, the interconnections between all the assets and service components, and how changes in any area will affect the whole system and its constituent parts over time, a service provider can deliver benefits such as:

- Ability to adapt to the changing needs of customers and markets
- Sustainable performance
- Better approach to managing services, risks, costs and value delivery
- Effective and efficient service management
- Simplified approach that is easier for people to use
- Less conflict between processes
- Reduced duplication and bureaucracy.

Many businesses have adopted management system standards for competitive advantage and to ensure a consistent approach in implementing service management across their value network. Implementation of a management system also provides support for governance (see section 2.3.1).

Definition: management system (ISO 9001)

The framework of policy, processes, functions, standards, guidelines and tools that ensures an organization or part of an organization can achieve its objectives.

A management system of an organization can adopt multiple management system standards, such as:

- A quality management system (ISO 9001)
- An environmental management system (ISO 14000)
- A service management system (ISO/IEC 20000)

- An information security management system (ISO/IEC 27001)
- A management system for software asset management (ISO/IEC 19770).

Service providers are increasingly adopting these standards to be able to demonstrate their service management capability. As there are common elements between such management systems, they should be managed in an integrated way rather than having separate management systems. To meet the requirements of a specific management system standard, an organization needs to analyse the requirements of the relevant standard in detail and compare them with those that have already been incorporated in the existing integrated management system. Appendix A provides further information on these standards.

ISO management system standards use the Plan-Do-Check-Act (PDCA) cycle shown in Figure 2.8. The ITIL service lifecycle approach embraces and enhances the interpretation of the PDCA cycle. You will see the PDCA cycle used in the structure of the guidance provided in each of the core ITIL publications. This guidance recognizes the need to drive governance, organizational design and management systems from the business strategy, service strategy and service requirements.

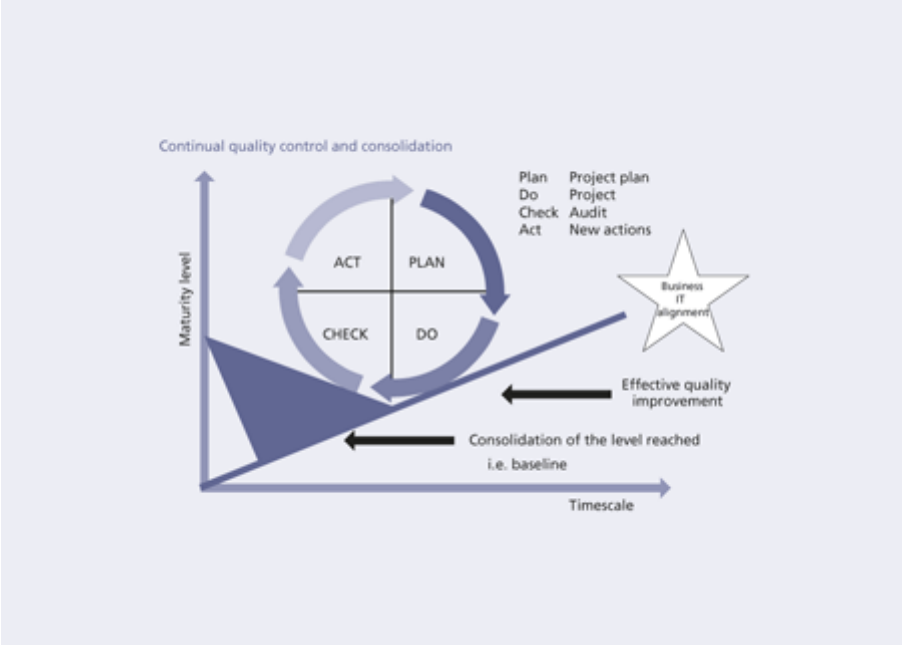


Figure 2.8 Plan-Do-Check-Act cycle

Definition: ISO/IEC 20000

An international standard for IT service management.

ISO/IEC 20000 is an internationally recognized standard that allows organizations to demonstrate excellence and prove best practice in ITSM. Part 1 specifiesrequirements for the service provider to plan, establish, implement, operate, monitor, review, maintain and improve a service management system (SMS). Coordinated integration and implementation of an SMS, to meet the Part 1 requirements, provides ongoing control, greater effectiveness, efficiency and opportunities for continual improvement. It ensures that the service provider:

- Understands and fulfils the service requirements to achieve customer satisfaction
- Establishes the policy and objectives for service management
- Designs and delivers changes and services that add value for the customer
- Monitors, measures and reviews performance of the SMS and the services
- Continually improves the SMS and the services based on objective measurements.

Service providers across the world have successfully established an SMS to direct and control their service management activities. The adoption of an SMS should be astrategic decision for an organization.

One of the most common routes for an organization to achieve the requirements of ISO/IEC 20000 is by adopting ITIL service management best practices and using the ITIL qualification scheme for professional development.

Certification to ISO/IEC 20000-1 by an accredited certification body shows that a service provider is committed to delivering value to its customers and continual service improvement. It demonstrates the existence of an effective SMS that satisfies the requirements of an independent external audit. Certification gives a service provider a competitive edge in marketing. Many organizations specify a requirement to comply with ISO/IEC 20000 in their contracts and agreements.

2.4 The service lifecycle

Services and processes describe how things change, whereas structure describes how they are connected. Structure helps to determine the correct behaviours required for service management.

Structure describes how process, people, technology and partners are connected. Structure is essential for organizing information. Without structure, our service management knowledge is merely a collection of observations, practices and conflicting goals. The structure of the service lifecycle is an organizing framework, supported by the organizational structure, service portfolio and service models within an organization. Structure can influence or determine the behaviour of the organization and people. Altering the structure of service management can be more effective than simply controlling discrete events.

Without structure, it is difficult to learn from experience. It is difficult to use the past to educate for the future. We can learn from experience but we also need to confront directly many of the most important consequences of our actions.

See Chapter 1 for an introduction to each ITIL service lifecycle stage.

2.4.1 Specialization and coordination across the lifecycle

Organizations need a collaborative approach for the management of assets which are used to deliver and support services for their customers.

Organizations should function in the same manner as a high-performing sports team. Each player in a team and each member of the team's organization who are not players position themselves to support the goal of the team. Each player and team member has a different specialization that contributes to the whole. The team matures over time taking into account feedback from experience, best practice, current process and procedures to become an agile high-performing team.

Specialization and coordination are necessary in the lifecycle approach. Specialization allows for expert focus on components of the service but components of the service also need to work together for value. Specialization combined with coordination helps to manage expertise, improve focus and reduce overlaps and gaps in processes. Specialization and coordination together help to create a collaborative and agile organizational architecture that maximizes utilization of assets.

Coordination across the lifecycle creates an environment focused on business and customer outcomes instead of just IT objectives and projects. Coordination is also essential between functional groups, across the value network, and between processes and technology.

Feedback and control between organizational assets helps to enable operational efficiency, organizational effectiveness and economies of scale.

2.4.2 Processes through the service lifecycle

Each core ITIL lifecycle publication includes guidance on service management processes as shown in Table 2.1.

Table 2.1 The processes described in each core ITIL publication

Core ITIL lifecycle publication	Processes described in the publicati
ITIL Service Strategy	Strategy management for IT s Service portfolio management Financial management for IT s Demand management Business relationship manage
ITIL Service Design	Design coordination Service catalogue manageme Service level management Availability management Capacity management IT service continuity managem Information security managem Supplier management
ITIL Service Transition	Transition planning and suppo Change management Service asset and configuratio Release and deployment man Service validation and testing Change evaluation Knowledge management
ITIL Service Operation	Event management

Service management is more effective if people have a clear understanding of how processes interact throughout the service lifecycle, within the organization and with other parties (users, customers, suppliers).

Process integration across the service lifecycle depends on the service owner, process owners, process practitioners and other stakeholders understanding:

- The context of use, scope, purpose and limits of each process
- The strategies, policies and standards that apply to the processes and to the management of interfaces between processes
- Authorities and responsibilities of those involved in each process
- The information provided by each process that flows from one process to another; who produces it; and how it is used by integrated processes.

Integrating service management processes depends on the flow of information across process and organizational boundaries. This in turn depends on implementing supporting technology and management information systems across organizational boundaries, rather than in silos. If service management processes are implemented, followed or changed in isolation, they can become a bureaucratic overhead that does not deliver value for money. They could also damage or negate theoperation or value of other processes and services.

As discussed in section 2.2.2, each process has a clear scope with a structured set of activities that transform inputs to deliver the outputs reliably. A process interface is the boundary of the process. Process integration is the linking of processes by ensuring that information flows from one process to another effectively and efficiently. If there is management commitment to process integration, processes are generally easier to implement and there will be fewer conflicts between processes.

Stages of the lifecycle work together as an integrated system to support the ultimate objective of service management for business value realization. Every stage is interdependent as shown in Figure 2.9. See Appendix D for examples of inputs and outputs across the service lifecycle.

The SKMS, described in section 2.2.5, enables integration across the service lifecycle stages. It provides secure and controlled access to the knowledge, information and data that are needed to manage and deliver services. The service portfolio represents all the assets presently engaged or being released in various stages of the lifecycle.

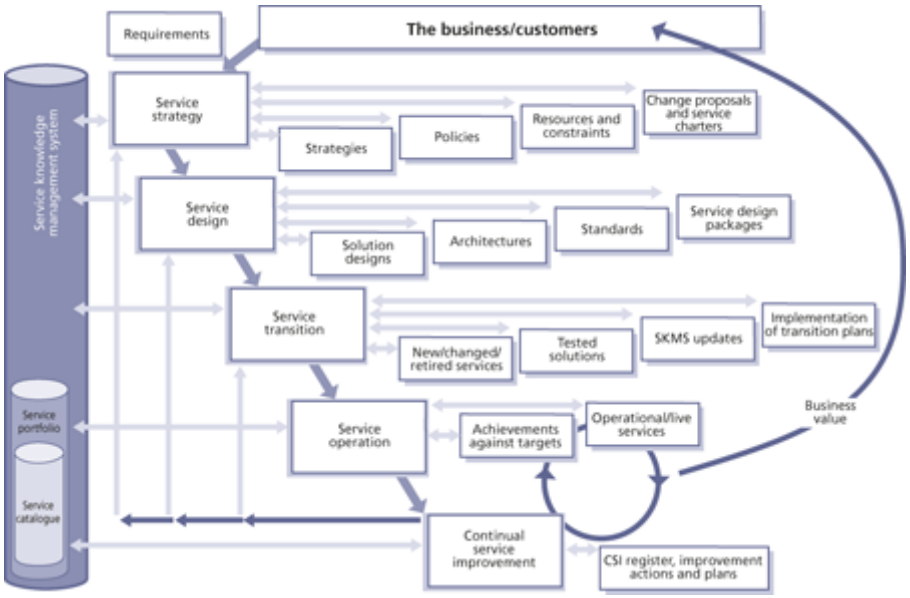


Figure 2.9 Integration across the service lifecycle

Chapter 1 provides a summary of each stage in the service lifecycle but it is also important to understand how the lifecycle stages work together.

Service strategy establishes policies and principles that provide guidance for the whole service lifecycle. The service portfolio is defined in this lifecycle stage, and new or changed services are chartered.

During the service design stage of the lifecycle, everything needed to transition and operate the new or changed service is documented in a service design package. This lifecycle stage also designs everything needed to create, transition and operate the services, including management information systems and tools, architectures, processes, measurement methods and metrics.

The activities of the service transition and service operation stages of the lifecycle are defined during service design. Service transition ensures that the requirements of the service strategy, developed in service design, are effectively realized in service operation while controlling the risks of failure and disruption.

The service operation stage of the service lifecycle carries out the activities and processes required to deliver the agreed services. During this stage of the lifecycle, the value defined in the service strategy is realized.

Continual service improvement acts in tandem with all the other lifecycle stages. All processes, activities, roles, services and technology should be measured and subjected to continual improvement.

Most ITIL processes and functions have activities that take place across multiple stages of the service lifecycle. For example:

- The service validation and testing process may design tests during the service design stage and perform these tests during service transition.

- The technical management function may provide input to strategic decisions about technology, as well as assisting in the design and transition of infrastructurecomponents.
- Business relationship managers may assist in gathering detailed requirements during the service design stage of the lifecycle, or take part in the management ofmajor incidents during the service operation stage.
- All service lifecycle stages contribute to the seven-step improvement process.

Appendix D identifies some of the major inputs and outputs between each stage of the service lifecycle. Chapter 3 of each core ITIL publication provides more detail on the inputs and outputs of the specific lifecycle stage it describes.

The strength of the service lifecycle rests upon continual feedback throughout each stage of the lifecycle. This feedback ensures that service optimization is managed from a business perspective and is measured in terms of the value the business derives from services at any point in time during the service lifecycle. The service lifecycle is non-linear in design. At every point in the service lifecycle, the process of monitoring, assessment and feedback between each stage drives decisions about the need for minor course corrections or major service improvement initiatives.

Figure 2.10 illustrates some examples of the continual feedback system built into the service lifecycle.

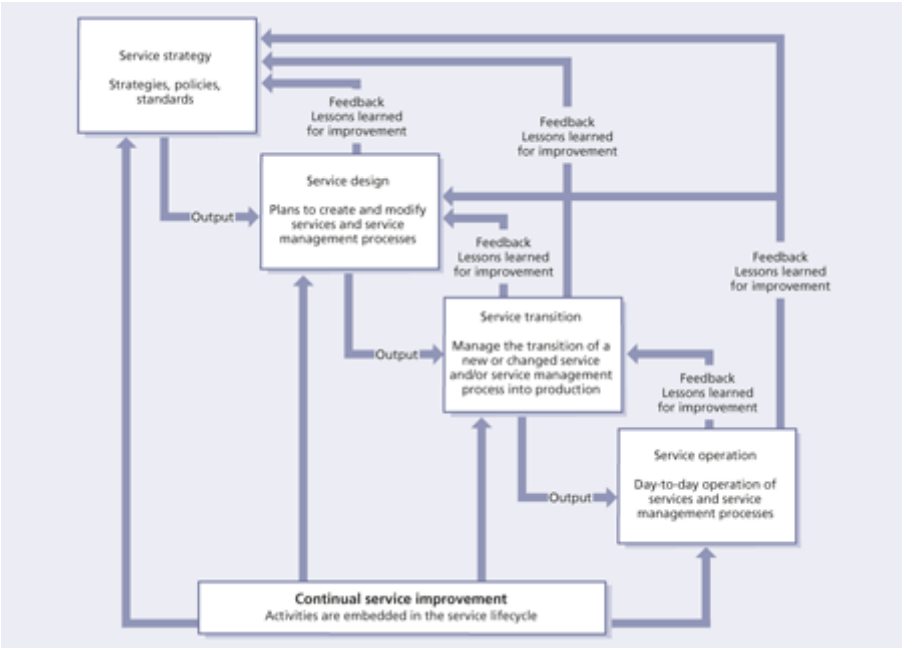


Figure 2.10 Continual service improvement and the service lifecycle

Adopting appropriate technology to automate the processes and provide management with the information that supports the processes is also important for effective and efficient service management.

3 Continual service improvement principles

3.1 Continual service improvement approach

3.2 CSI and organizational change

3.3 Ownership
3.4 CSI register
3.5 External and internal drivers
3.6 Service level management
3.7 Knowledge management
3.8 The Deming Cycle
3.9 Service measurement
3.10 IT governance
3.11 Frameworks, models, standards and quality systems
3.12 CSI inputs and outputs

Service improvement must focus on increasing the efficiency, maximizing the effectiveness and optimizing the cost of services and the underlying IT service management(ITSM) processes. The only way to do this is to ensure that improvement opportunities are identified throughout the entire service lifecycle.

3.1 Continual service improvement approach

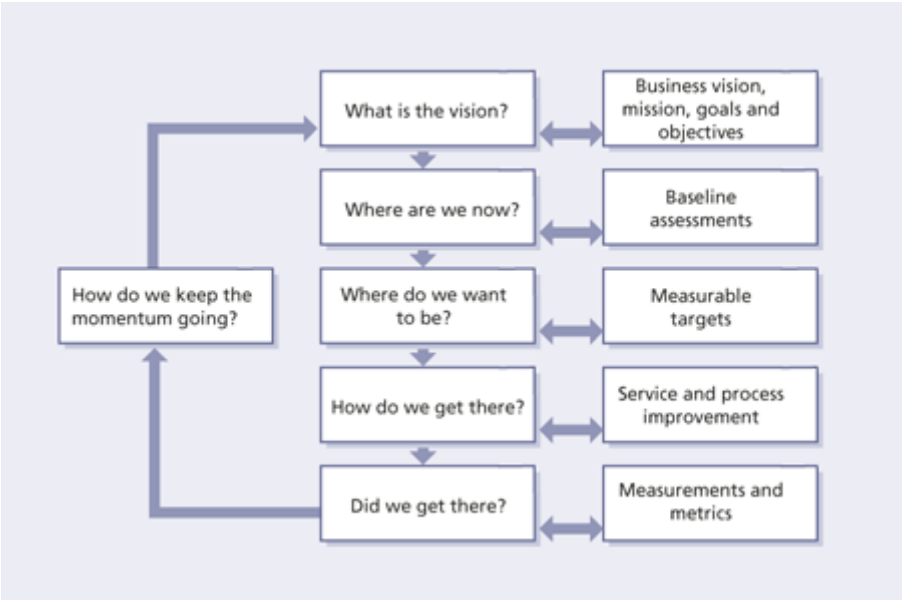


Figure 3.1 Continual service improvement approach

Figure 3.1 shows an overall approach to continual service improvement (CSI) and illustrates a continual cycle of improvement. This approach to improvement can be summarized as follows:

- Embrace the vision by understanding the high-level business objectives. The vision should align the business and IT strategies.
- Assess the current situation to obtain an accurate, unbiased snapshot of where the organization is right now. This baseline assessment is an analysis of the current position in terms of the business, organization, people, process and technology.

- Understand and agree on the priorities for improvement based on a deeper development of the principles defined in the vision. The full vision may be years away but this step provides specific goals and a manageable timeframe.
- Detail the CSI plan to achieve higher quality service provision by implementing or improving ITSM processes.
- Verify that measurements and metrics are in place and that the milestones were achieved, process compliance is high, and business objectives and priorities were met by the level of service.
- Finally, the approach should ensure that the momentum for quality improvement is maintained by assuring that changes become embedded in the organization.

3.1.1 Business questions for CSI

The business needs to be involved with CSI in decision-making on what improvement initiatives make sense and add the greatest value back to the business. There are some key questions that will assist the business in making decisions about whether a CSI initiative is warranted or not.

The CSI approach will enable the correct questions to be asked from both a business and an IT perspective. Not understanding some of these questions can lead to challenges, perceived poor service or in some cases actual poor service:

- What is the vision? The question should be asked by the IT service provider to understand what the ultimate and long term aims are.
- Where are we now? This is a question every business should start out asking as this creates a baseline of data for services currently being delivered.
- Where do we want to be? This is often expressed as business requirements.
- How do we get there? What improvement initiatives are required in the short, medium and long term? These initiatives should be logged in the CSI register (see section 3.4).
- Did we get there? This is documented through monitoring, reporting and reviewing of service level achievements and actual performance against targets identified by the business requirements.

There is a common belief that CSI activities cannot improve a service that doesn't yet exist and that the service has to be operational to identify improvement opportunities. However, CSI can add value in designing a new service by bringing the knowledge and experience from improving existing services. CSI can proactively prevent the potential flaws in the new service. CSI activities can be executed within service strategy, service design, service transition and service operation.

3.2 CSI and organizational change

Improving service management is to embark upon an organizational change programme. Many organizational change programmes fail to achieve the desired results. Successful ITSM requires understanding the way in which work is done and putting in place a programme of change within the IT organization. This type of change is, by its very nature, prone to difficulties. It involves people and the way they work. People generally do not like to change; the benefits must be explained to everyone to gain their support and to ensure that they break out of old working practices.

One approach to managing organizational change is that of John P. Kotter. His eight-step approach to transforming an organization is discussed in detail in section 8.4.

3.3 Ownership

The principle of ownership is fundamental to any improvement strategy. CSI is a best practice and one of the keys to successful implementation is to ensure that a specific manager, a CSI manager, is accountable for ensuring the best practice is adopted and sustained throughout the organization. The CSI manager is the chief advocate and owns all CSI issues. The CSI manager is accountable for the success of CSI in the organization. This ownership responsibility extends beyond ensuring the CSI practices are embedded in the organization but also to ensuring there are adequate resources (including people and technology) to support and enable CSI. Also included are ongoing CSI activities such as monitoring, analysing, evaluating trends and reporting as well as project-based service improvement activities – activities that are fundamental to the ITIL framework. Improvement will be difficult without clear and unambiguous accountability.

While the CSI manager is responsible and accountable for CSI, the CSI manager is not accountable for improvements to specific services. Specific service improvements are the responsibility of the appropriate service owner working within the CSI framework.

3.4 CSI register

It is likely that several initiatives or possibilities for improvement are identified. It is recommended that a CSI register is kept to record all the improvement opportunities and that each one should be categorized into small, medium or large undertakings. Additionally they should be categorized into initiatives that can be achieved quickly, or in the medium term or longer term. Each improvement initiative should also show the benefits that will be achieved by its implementation. With this information a clear prioritized list can be produced. One failing that has been observed is when something has been identified as a lower priority. It never makes its way higher up the list for a further consideration, so automated raising of priorities over time may be a useful addition to the register.

The CSI register contains important information for the overall service provider and should be held and regarded as part of the service knowledge management system(SKMS).

The CSI register will introduce a structure and visibility to CSI ensuring that all initiatives are captured and recorded, and benefits realized. Additionally the benefits will be measured to show that they have given the desired results. In forecasting the benefits of each proposed improvement we should also try to quantify the benefit in terms of aspirational key performance indicator (KPI) metrics. This will assist in prioritizing those changes that deliver the most significant incremental benefit to the business.

The CSI register provides a coordinated, consistent view of the potentially numerous improvement activities. It is important to define the interface from the CSI register of initiatives with strategic initiatives and with processes such as problem management, capacity management and change management. In particular the service review meeting is likely to result in a number of requirements for improvement.

The CSI manager should have accountability and responsibility for the production and maintenance of the CSI register.

Appendix B shows a simple example of what a CSI register could look like. Each organization should evaluate its own requirements and amend the register to suit their own purposes.

3.5 External and internal drivers

There are two major areas within every organization driving improvement: aspects that are external to the organization such as regulation, legislation, competition,external customer requirements, market pressures and economics; and aspects that are internal to the organization such as organizational structures, culture, new knowledge, new technologies, new skills, existing and projected staffing levels, union rules etc. In some cases these aspects may serve to hinder improvement rather than drive it forward. A SWOT analysis (examining strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats), discussed in section 5.5.9, may be helpful in illuminating significant opportunities for improvement. The strengths and weaknesses focus on the internal aspects of the organization while the opportunities and threats focus on aspects external to the organization.

3.6 Service level management

Adopting the service level management (SLM) process is a key principle of CSI. While in the past many IT organizations viewed SLM as merely a smattering of isolatedagreements around system availability or service desk calls, this is no longer true. SLM is no longer optional. Today's business demands that IT be driven by service requirements and outcomes. This service orientation of IT toward the business becomes the foundation for the trusted partnership that IT must endeavour to create. Today IT is a core enabler of every critical business process. It cannot be overemphasized that IT organizations can no longer afford to operate with a technology-only bias, but rather must consistently strive to be included in every conceivable channel of communication and level of decision-making all the way to the boardroom.

SLM involves a number of steps:

- Involving the business and determining its service level requirements (SLRs)
- Identifying internal relationships in IT organizations, negotiating the terms and responsibilities of the internal relationships, and codifying them with operational level agreements (OLAs)
- Identifying existing contractual relationships with external vendors; working with the supplier manager to verify that these underpinning contracts (UCs) meet the revised business requirements
- Using the service catalogue as the baseline to negotiate service level agreements (SLAs) with the business
- Reviewing service achievement and identifying where improvements are required, feeding them into CSI.

Once the IT organization and the business begin working together through SLM, IT management soon realizes that the old definitions of 'successful IT' are beginning to fall by the wayside. A high network availability percentage or great ratings in a customer satisfaction survey are no longer the end goal but merely positive metrics rolling towards the achievement of a service level and the required business outcomes. IT management understands that with the adoption of SLM a fundamental shift has taken place. The definition of success in IT is both the agreed service level achieved and the resulting business outcomes achieved. IT is then structured, managed, staffed, funded and operated to meet or exceed the service levels. The service level rules and everything else are just details. The SLM process is fully defined in *ITIL Service Design*.

3.7 Knowledge management

'*Those who cannot remember the past are condemned to repeat it*.' George Santayana

Knowledge management is explained fully in *ITIL Service Transition* but it plays a key role in CSI. Within each service lifecycle stage, data should be captured to enable knowledge gain and an understanding of what is actually happening, thus enabling wisdom. This is often referred to as the Data-to-Information-to-Knowledge-to-Wisdom(DIKW) structure (see Figure 3.2). All too often an organization will capture the appropriate data but fail to process the data into information, synthesize the information into knowledge, and then combine that knowledge with others to bring wisdom. Wisdom will lead to better decisions around improvement.

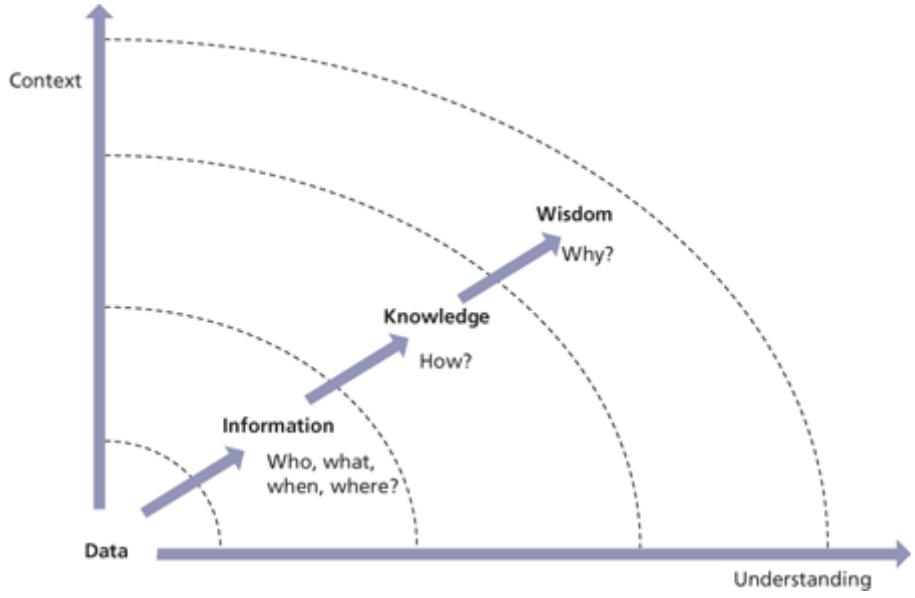


Figure 3.2 Knowledge management leads to better IT decisions

This applies both when looking at the IT services themselves and when drilling down into each individual IT process. Knowledge management is a mainstay of any improvement process.

3.8 The Deming Cycle

W. Edwards Deming is best known for his management philosophy leading to higher quality, increased productivity, and a more competitive position. As part of this philosophy he formulated 14 points of attention for managers. Some of them are more appropriate to service management than others. For quality improvement he proposed the Deming Cycle or Circle. This cycle is particularly applicable in CSI. As already mentioned in section 2.3.2, the four key stages of the cycle are Plan, Do, Check and Act, after which a phase of consolidation prevents the circle from rolling back down the hill (see Figure 2.8). Our goal in using the Deming Cycle (or the PDCA cycle, as it is now more commonly known) is steady, ongoing improvement. It is a fundamental tenet of CSI.

The PDCA cycle is critical at two points in CSI: implementation of CSI, and for the application of CSI to services and service management processes. At implementation, all four stages of the PDCA cycle are used. With ongoing improvement, CSI draws on the check and act stages to monitor, measure, review and implement initiatives.

The seven-step improvement process fully described in Chapter 4 can be viewed as an example of an implementation of the PDCA cycle, with each of the steps falling within one of the phases of the cycle: Plan, Do, Check, Act.

The cycle is underpinned by a process-led approach to management where defined processes are in place, the activities are measured for compliance to expected values and outputs are audited to validate and improve the process.

It should be noted that the PDCA cycle is a fundamental part of many quality standards including ISO/IEC 20000.

3.9 Service measurement

3.9.1 Baselines

An important beginning point for highlighting improvement is to establish baselines as markers or starting points for later comparison. Baselines are also used to establish an initial data point to determine if a service or process needs to be improved. As a result, it is important that baselines are documented, recognized and accepted throughout the organization. Baselines must be established at each level: strategic goals and objectives, tactical process maturity, and operational metrics and KPIs.

If a baseline is not initially established the first measurement efforts will become the baseline. That is why it is essential to collect data at the outset, even if the integrity of the data is in question. It is better to have data to question than to have no data at all.

3.9.2 Why do we measure?

As shown in Figure 3.3 there are four reasons to monitor and measure:

- **To validate** Monitoring and measuring to validate previous decisions
- **To direct** Monitoring and measuring to set the direction for activities in order to meet set targets; this is the most prevalent reason for monitoring and measuring
- **To justify** Monitoring and measuring to justify, with factual evidence or proof, that a course of action is required
- **To intervene** Monitoring and measuring to identify a point of intervention including subsequent changes and corrective actions.

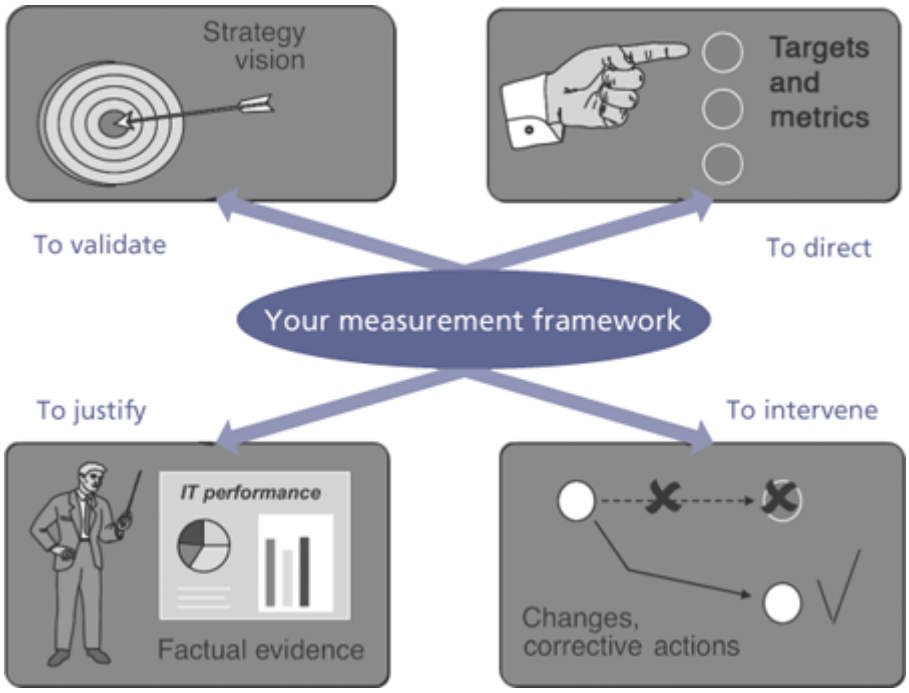


Figure 3.3 Why do we measure?

The four basic reasons to monitor and measure lead to three key questions: 'Why are we monitoring and measuring?', 'When do we stop?' and 'Is anyone using the data?' To answer these questions, it is important to identify which of the above reasons is driving the measurement effort. Too often, we continue to measure long after the need has passed. Every time you produce a report you should ask: 'Do we still need this?'

3.9.3 The seven-step improvement process

Fundamental to CSI is the concept of measurement. CSI uses the seven-step improvement process shown in Figure 3.4. The seven-step improvement process is a crucial part of CSI and is described in detail in section Chapter 4 – but it is briefly introduced here so it can be seen alongside the other key principles.

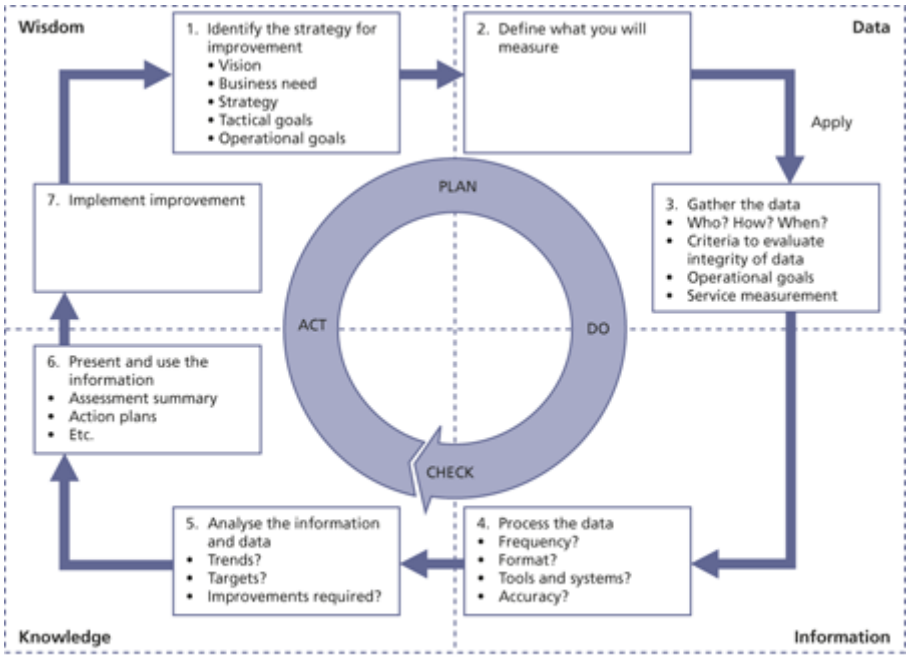


Figure 3.4 The seven-step improvement process

3.9.3.1 Which steps support CSI?

It is obvious that all the activities of the improvement process assist CSI in some way. It is relatively simple to identify what takes place but more difficult to understand exactly how this will happen. The improvement process spans not only the management organization but the entire service lifecycle. This is a cornerstone of CSI, the main steps of which are as follows:

1. **Identify the strategy for improvement**
   Identify the overall vision, business need, the strategy and the tactical and operational goals.

2. **Define what you will measure**
   Service strategy and service design should have identified this information early in the lifecycle. CSI can then start its cycle all over again at 'Where are we now?' and 'Where do we want to be?' This identifies the ideal situation for both the business and IT. CSI can conduct a gap analysis to identify the opportunities for improvement as well as answering the question 'How do we get there?'

3. **Gather the data**
   In order to properly answer the question 'Did we get there?', data must first be gathered (usually through service operations). Data can be gathered from many different sources based on goals and objectives identified. At this point the data is raw and no conclusions are drawn.

4. **Process the data**
   Here the data is processed in alignment with the critical success factors (CSFs) and KPIs specified. This means that timeframes are coordinated, unaligned data is rationalized and made

consistent, and gaps in the data are identified. The simple goal of this step is to process data from multiple disparate sources to give it context that can be compared. Once we have rationalized the data we can begin analysis.

5. **Analyse the information and data**
   As we bring the data more and more into context, it evolves from raw data into information with which we can start to answer questions about who, what, when, where and how as well as trends and the impact on the business. It is the analysing step that is most often overlooked or forgotten in the rush to present data to management.

6. **Present and use the information**
   Here the answer to 'Did we get there?' is formatted and communicated in whatever way necessary to present to the various stakeholders an accurate picture of the results of the improvement efforts. Knowledge is presented to the business in a form and manner that reflects their needs and assists them in determining the next steps.

7. **Implement improvement**
   The knowledge gained is used to optimize, improve and correct services and processes. Issues have been identified and now solutions are implemented – wisdom is applied to the knowledge. The improvements that need to be taken to improve the service or process are communicated and explained to the organization. Following this step the organization establishes a new baseline and the cycle begins anew.

While these seven steps appear to form a circular set of activities, in fact, they constitute a knowledge spiral (see Figure 3.5). In practice, knowledge gathered and wisdom derived from the knowledge at one level of the organization becomes a data input to the next.

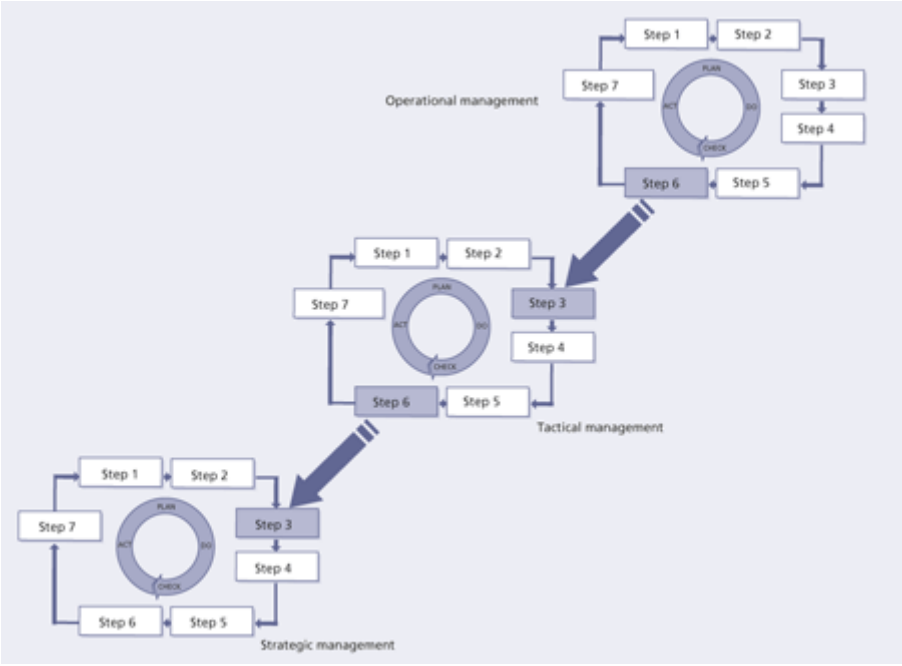


Figure 3.5 Knowledge spiral – a gathering activity

People often believe data, information, knowledge and wisdom to be synonymous or at least broadly similar in meaning. This view is incorrect. There is a significant difference between each of the four items.

Data is quantitative. Data is defined as numbers, characters, images or other outputs from devices to convert physical quantities into symbols, in a very broad sense. Essentially it can be defined as a collection of facts, whereas information is the result of processing and organizing data in a way that adds to the knowledge of the person receiving it. Raw data is a relative term; data processing commonly occurs by stages, and the 'processed data' from one stage may be considered the 'raw data' of the next. For example, the service desk and incident management may collect data on an average of 12,000 incidents per month. Data can also be qualitative such as comments in a customer satisfaction survey.

Data can be defined as a collection of facts in context from which conclusions may be drawn. Information is the result of processing and organizing data in a way that adds to the knowledge of the person receiving it.

By processing data into information it is possible to know the breakdown of which customers are using the service desk and the specific issues that are incidents orservice requests. For example, further processing of the data into information may show that 32% of all contacts to the service desk are 'How to' questions, and that 18% of all contacts are service incidents with the organization's email system.

Knowledge can be defined as information combined with experience, context, interpretation and reflection. For example, based on the data and information, and an understanding of who uses the service, and their reasons for using the service, the impact to the business can be determined.

Wisdom is defined as the ability to make correct judgements and decisions. It consists of making the best use of available knowledge. For example, knowledge about the customer impact of incidents can lead to identifying improvement opportunities such as training programmes or initiating a service improvement plan (SIP) for improving the email service.

3.10 IT governance

IT governance is only part of an organization's corporate governance, but it is an important part. Governance is important for all organizations and will provide anenvironment within which CSI can operate and thrive. With the exposure of high-level corporate fraud in the early years of this century, IT was forced to comply with new legislation and an ever-increasing number of external regulations. External auditors are now commonplace in large IT organizations.

Chapter 5 of *ITIL Service Strategy* includes a detailed description of governance and how it should be applied to ITSM.

The Chartered Institute of Management Accountants (CIMA) has a framework for enterprise governance as shown in Figure 3.6, which covers the corporate governance and the business management aspects of the organization.

Figure 3.6 Enterprise governance (source: CIMA)

IT governance

'*IT governance is the responsibility of the board of directors and executive management. It is an integral part of enterprise governance and consists of the leadership, organizational structures and processes that ensure that the organization's IT sustains and extends the organization's strategies and objectives.*'

IT Governance Institute (2003). *Board Briefing on IT Governance*, 2nd edition.

IT governance touches nearly every area detailed in Figure 3.6. On the one hand, IT organizations must now comply with new rules and legislation and continually demonstrate their compliance through successful independent audits by external organizations. On the other hand, IT organizations are increasingly being called on to do more with less and create additional value while maximizing the use of existing resources.

These increasing pressures dovetail perfectly with the basic premise of ITIL: IT is a service business. Existing internal IT organizations must transform themselves into effective and efficient IT service providers or they will cease to be relevant to the business and, soon after, cease to exist. This continual and unceasing drive toward greater business value with greater internal efficiency is at the heart of CSI.

3.11 Frameworks, models, standards and quality systems

Appendix A gives a detailed description of related guidance and outlines the frameworks, models, standards and quality systems that an organization may choose to use in support of ITSM. As well as ITIL itself this includes:

- Quality management systemISO 9000
- Total Quality Management (TQM)
- Risk management
- Control OBjectives for Information and related Technology (COBIT)
- ISO/IEC 20000 and other ISO standards for IT
- ISO 14001 – Environmental management standard
- Programme and project management including PRINCE2
- Skills Framework for the Information Age (SFIA)
- Capability Maturity Model Integration (CMMI)
- ISO/IEC 27001 – Information security management system.

3.11.1 Which one should I choose?

Experience has shown that while each may be complete unto itself, none provides a total answer for IT management. Indeed, there is a good deal of overlap between them but, for the most part, they are not competitive or exclusive but complementary. In fact, many organizations use a combination to manage and improve IT more effectively.

It should be emphasized that ISO/IEC 20000 (the IT service management standard) is most closely aligned with ITIL and is specifically aimed at IT service providers.

ISACA, in conjunction with the Office of Government Commerce (OGC), created a briefing paper entitled 'Aligning COBIT, ITIL and ISO17799 for Business Benefit'. Other organizations have combined ITIL, CMMI and Six Sigma as their formula for success.

Some organizations have doubts about which frameworks, models, standards or quality system to choose, not wishing to go down the wrong path. The decision is not 'Which one should I choose?' but rather 'What should I improve first?'

An effective CSI practice will be integrated within all stages of the service lifecycle. The greatest value to the business and IT will be realized by having a continuous monitoring and feedback loop as the service and ITSM processes move through the service lifecycle. Look for improvement opportunities within service strategy, service design, service transition and service operation. It is imperative that the concept of continual improvement be woven into the day-to-day fabric of the organization.

3.12 CSI inputs and outputs

Table 3.1 shows the major CSI inputs and outputs, by lifecycle stage. Appendix D provides a summary of the major inputs and outputs between each stage of the service lifecycle.

Table 3.1 CSI inputs and outputs by lifecycle stage

Lifecycle stage	CSI inputs (from the lifecycle stages in the first column)	CSI outputs (to the lifecycle stages in the first column)
Service strategy	Vision and mission Service portfolio Policies Strategies and strategic plans Priorities Financial information and budgets Patterns of business activity Achievements against metrics, KPIs and CSFs Improvement opportunities	Results of customer and user satisfaction surveys Input to business cases and the service portfolio Feedback on strategies and policies Financial information regarding improvement initiatives for input to budgets Data required for metrics, KPIs

	logged in the CSI register	and CSFs Service reports Requests for change (RFCs) for implementing improvements
Service design	Service catalogue Service design packages including details of utility and warranty Knowledge and information in the SKMS Achievements against metrics, KPIs and CSFs Design of services, measurements, processes, infrastructure andsystems Design for the seven-step improvement process and procedures Improvement opportunities logged in the CSI register	Results of customer and user satisfaction surveys Input to design requirements Data required for metrics, KPIs and CSFs Service reports Feedback on service design packages RFCs for implementing improvements
Service transition	Test reports Change evaluation reports Knowledge and information in the SKMS Achievements against metrics, KPIs and CSFs Improvement opportunities logged in the CSI register	Results of customer and user satisfaction surveys Input to testing requirements Data required for metrics, KPIs and CSFs Input to change evaluation and change advisory board meetings Service reports RFCs for implementing improvements
Service operation	Operational performance data and service records Proposed problem resolutions and proactive measures Knowledge and information in the SKMS Achievements against metrics, KPIs and CSFs Improvement opportunities logged in the CSI register	Results of customer and user satisfaction surveys Service reports and dashboards Data required for metrics, KPIs and CSFs RFCs for implementing improvements

4 Continual service improvement processes

4.1 The seven-step improvement process

Many activities have to be completed to ensure continual service improvement (CSI) across the service lifecycle. Some of them could be regarded as processes in their own right but in order that readers get the full picture they have been pulled together into a single contiguous process: the seven-step improvement process.

4.1 The seven-step improvement process

Chapter 3 introduced the seven-step improvement process shown in Figure 3.4 and its interaction with the Plan-Do-Check-Act (PDCA) cycle and the CSI approach. The PDCA cycle provides steady, ongoing improvement, which is a fundamental tenet of CSI.

Figure 3.4 also shows how the cycle fits into the Data-to-Information-to-Knowledge-to-Wisdom (DIKW) structure of knowledge management. The integration of the PDCA cycle and the seven-step improvement process is as follows:

- Plan

1. Identify the strategy for improvement
2. Define what you will measure

- Do

3. Gather the data
4. Process the data

- Check

5. Analyse the information and data
6. Present and use the information

- Act

7. Implement improvement.

4.1.1 Purpose and objectives

The purpose of the seven-step improvement process is to define and manage the steps needed to identify, define, gather, process, analyse, present and implement improvements.

The objectives of the seven-step improvement process are to:

- Identify opportunities for improving services, processes, tools etc.
- Reduce the cost of providing services and ensuring that IT services enable the required business outcomes to be achieved. A clear objective will be cost reduction, but this is not the only

criterion. If service delivery or quality reduces as a result the overall impact may be neutral or even negative.

- Identify what needs to be measured, analysed and reported to establish improvement opportunities.
- Continually review service achievements to ensure they remain matched to business requirements; continually align and re-align service provision with outcomerequirements.
- Understand what to measure, why it is being measured and carefully define the successful outcome.

It is important to note that improvements in quality should not be implemented if there is a cost associated with the improvement and if this cost has not been justified. Every potential improvement opportunity will have to have a business case justification to show that the business will have an overall benefit. For small initiatives the business case does not have to be a full blown report but could be a simple justification. The seven-step improvement process is not free-standing and will only achieve its desired outcomes when applied to technology, services, processes, organization or partners.

4.1.2 Scope

The seven-step improvement process includes analysis of the performance and capabilities of services, processes throughout the lifecycle, partners and technology. It includes the continual alignment of the portfolio of IT services with the current and future business needs as well as the maturity of the enabling IT processes for eachservice. It also includes making best use of the technology that the organization has and looks to exploit new technology as it becomes available where there is abusiness case for doing so. Also within the scope are the organizational structure, the capabilities of the personnel, and asking whether people are working in appropriate functions and roles, and if they have the required skills.

4.1.3 Value to business

The value of the seven-step improvement process is that by monitoring and analysing the delivery of services it will ensure the current and future business outcomerequirements can be met. The seven-step improvement process enables continual assessment of the current situation against business needs and identifies opportunities to improve service provision for customers.

4.1.4 Policies, principles and basic concepts

The seven-step improvement process puts a structure in place to enable continual assessment of the current situation against business needs and looks for opportunities to improve service provision, thus enabling the overall business to be more successful.

4.1.4.1 Policies

Many of the policies that support the seven-step improvement process are often found as a part of other processes such as service level management (SLM), availability management and capacity management. Examples of some of these policies are:

- Monitoring requirements must be defined and implemented
- Data must be gathered and analysed and its integrity checked on a consistent basis

- Trend reporting must be provided on a consistent basis
- Service level achievement reports must be provided on a consistent basis
- Internal and external service reviews must be completed on a consistent basis (internal is within IT and external is with the business)
- Services must have either clearly defined service levels or service targets that can be used to determine if there are gaps in the services provided
- Service management processes must have critical success factors (CSFs) and key performance indicators (KPIs) to determine if there are gaps between the expected outcome and the real outcome.

On a regular basis means that the activity is not done *ad hoc* but on scheduled dates such as monthly or quarterly. Most organizations review service achievement and service management process results on a monthly basis.

If a new service is being introduced, it is recommended to monitor, report and review much sooner than after a month. You may want to review the new service daily, as part of early life support, for a period of time, before changing to weekly and finally monthly reviews.

The following are additional CSI policies that an IT service provider should implement:

- All improvement initiatives must use the formal change management process
- All functional groups within IT have a responsibility for CSI activities. This might be only one person in the group, but the intent here is that CSI is not usually a functional group within an organization but that everyone has a hand in supporting CSI activities
- Roles and responsibilities will be documented, communicated and filled within IT.

When defining the CSI policies you may want to use a consistent template. The template in Table 4.1 is an example that documents the policy statement, reason for the policy and a definition of the benefits of the policy. If an organization has difficulty defining the reason for and benefits of a policy it should consider whether the policy is needed. If compliance to a policy cannot be monitored then the value of the policy must be in doubt.

Table 4.1 Policy template example

Title	Monitoring services, systems and components
Policy statement	IT and the business must agree on what to monitor and collect data for each service. This data should be aligned with the service level agreements (SLAs), operational level agreements (OLAs) and contracts.
Reason for policy	Provides input into CSI activities to identify gaps and improvement opportunities.
Benefits	Ensures agreement on defining what to monitor (work with SLM).

	Defines monitoring requirements for new services and/or existing services to support CSI activities.
	Identifies trends and gaps.
	Supports prioritization of improvement projects.

4.1.4.2 Principles

Many service providers operate in a competitive environment and they need to continually assess their services against market expectations to ensure they remain competitive. Also, new delivery mechanisms (e.g. cloud computing) can introduce service efficiencies and need to be reviewed. The following activities should be regularly performed:

- Services must be checked against competitive service offerings to ensure they continue to add true business value to the client, and the service provider remains competitive in its delivery of such services.
- Services must be reviewed in the light of new technological advances (e.g. cloud deployment architectures) to ensure they are delivering the most efficient services to the customer.

4.1.4.3 Basic concepts

CSI is often viewed as an *ad hoc* activity within IT services. The activity is only triggered when someone in IT management flags up that there is a problem. This is not the right way to address CSI. Often these reactionary events are not even providing continual improvement, but simply stopping a single failure from occurring again.

CSI takes a commitment from everyone in IT working throughout the service lifecycle to be successful at improving services and service management processes. It requires ongoing attention, a well-thought-out plan, and consistent attention to monitoring, analysing and reporting results with an eye toward improvement. Improvements can be incremental in nature but also require a huge commitment to implement a new service or meet new business requirements.

This section spells out the seven steps of improvement, each of which needs attention. There is no reward for taking a short cut or not addressing each step in a sequential nature. If any step is missed, there is a risk of not being efficient and effective in meeting the goals of CSI.

IT services must ensure that proper staffing and tools are identified and implemented to support CSI activities. It is also important to understand the difference between what should be measured and what can be measured. Start small – don't expect to measure everything at once. Understand the organizational capability to gather and process the data. Be sure to spend time analysing data as this is where the real value comes in. Without analysis of the data, there is no real opportunity to truly improve services or service management processes. Think through the strategy and plan for reporting and using the data. Reporting is partly a marketing activity. It is important that IT managers focus on the value added to the organization as well as reporting on issues and achievements. In order for steps 5 to 7 to be

carried out correctly, it is imperative that the target audience is considered when packaging the information.

An organization can find improvement opportunities throughout the entire service lifecycle. An IT organization does not need to wait until a service or service management process is transitioned into the operations area to begin identifying improvement opportunities.

4.1.5 Process activities, methods and techniques

The seven-step improvement process is shown in Figure 3.4 and is discussed at the start of section 4.1.

Figure 4.1 shows the trail from metrics to KPI to CSF, all the way back to the vision where appropriate. Elements from this trail are used at points throughout the seven-step improvement process.

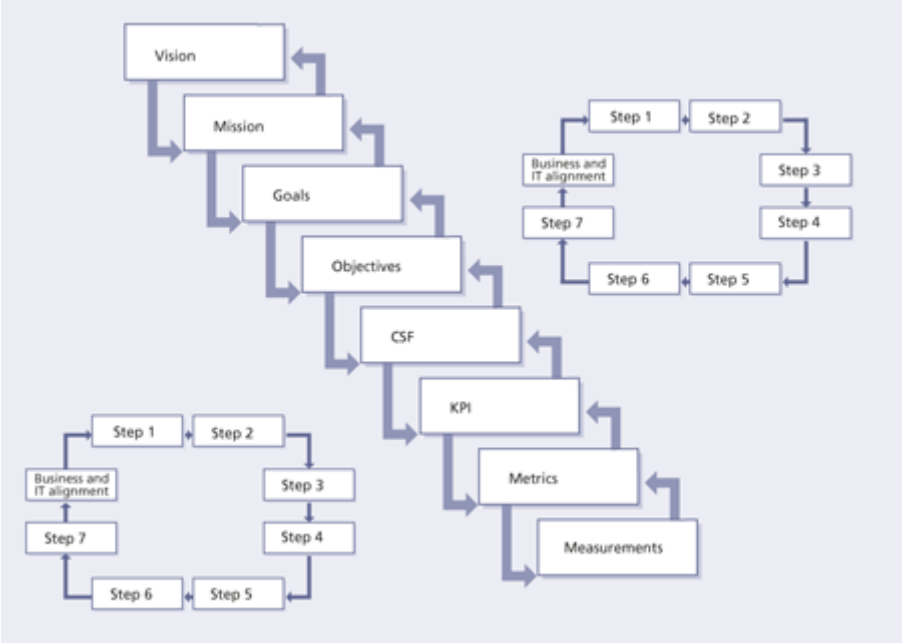


Figure 4.1 From vision to measurements

These are the seven steps.

4.1.5.1 Step 1 – Identify the strategy for improvement

Before any further activity can be started it is imperative that the overall vision is identified. What are we trying to achieve for the business as a whole? The questions we need to ask are: What initiatives does the business have that could be undermined by poor IT service provision? Or, more positively: How can improvements in IT enable the business vision to be achieved? The answers to these questions will come from stepping through the seven-step improvement process.

What are the business and IT strategy and plans for the coming months and years? Why do we want to measure for improvement? The overall strategy should be assessed and analysed to see where we need to focus our measurements, for example. The technical and operational goals as well as

the strategic goals need to be identified and assessed. The vision should not be to have state-of-the-art servers and desk-top computers, but to have state-of-the-art services that ensure and enable the overall business to perform as well as possible so it is not in any way constrained by the quality or cost of the IT services.

Like all the steps in the process, this should be revisited to reassess the potentially changing vision and goals. When revisiting this process we would apply any wisdom gained from previous iterations.

One of the potential sources for a revisit would be one or more initiatives raised and documented in the CSI register. Inputs for this step are:

- Business plans and strategy
- Service review meetings
- Vision and mission statements
- Corporate, divisional and departmental goals and objectives
- Legislative requirements
- Governance requirements
- Customer satisfaction surveys
- CSI initiatives as logged in the CSI register.

4.1.5.2 Step 2 – Define what you will measure

This step is directly related to the strategic, tactical and operational goals that have been defined for measuring services and service management processes as well as the existing technology and capability to support measuring and CSI activities. In this step you need to define what you should measure; define what you can actually measure; carry out a gap analysis; and then finalize the actual measurement plan.

As stated previously, measurement will take place at service, process and technology levels.

Step 2 is iterative during the rest of the activities. Depending on the goals and objectives to support service improvement activities, an organization may have to purchase and install new technology to support the gathering and processing of the data and/or hire staff with the required skills sets.

Effective service measures concentrate on a few vital, meaningful indicators that are economical, quantitative and usable for the desired results. If there are too many measures, organizations may become too intent on measurement and lose focus on improving results. A guiding principle is to measure that which matters most. IT has never lacked in the measuring area. In fact, many IT organizations measure far too many things that have little or no value. There is often no thought or effort given to aligning measures to the business and IT goals and objectives.

As part of the measuring process it is important to confirm regularly that the data being collected and collated is still required and that measurements are being adjusted where necessary. This responsibility falls on the owner of each report or dashboard. They are the individuals designated to keep the reports useful and to make sure that effective use is being made of the results.

The overall step is too often ignored because:

- The process does not include this step. Too often people start gathering information without asking what should be collected in the first place and if we have the capabilities to do the measurements. Often what is going to done with the data later is not considered. This is common but poor practice.
- The IT organization thinks it knows better. When it comes to data, IT believes, incorrectly, that they know the needs of their customers. The reality is that neither thecustomer nor the IT organization sits down together to discuss what should be measured or to identify the purpose of the data in the first place. Even in organizations where SLAs have been signed, they often include measurement and reporting requirements that cannot be met. This always leads to significant customer dissatisfaction.
- Tools are very sophisticated and can gather myriads of data points. IT organizations get lulled into a false sense of security in the knowledge that the data will be there when they need it. Too often the tool is too powerful for the needs of the organization. It is like hammering a small finishing nail using a sledgehammer.

When the data is finally presented (Step 6) without going through the rest of the steps, the results appear incorrect or incomplete. People blame each other, the vendor, the tools, anyone but themselves. This step is crucial. A dialogue must take place between IT and the customer. Goals and objectives of the target audience must be identified in order to properly identify what should be measured and what can be measured.

Based on the goals of the target audience (operational, tactical or strategic) the service owners need to define what they should measure in a perfect world by:

- Mapping the activities or elements of the service or service management processes that need to be measured
- Considering what measurements would indicate that each service and service management activity is being performed consistently to determine the health of the service.

Identify the measurements that can be provided based on existing toolsets, organizational culture and process maturity. Note there may be a gap in what can be measured compared with what should be measured. Quantify the cost and business risk of this gap to validate any expenditures for tools. The actual definition of what you will measure will come from this analysis.

When initially implementing service management processes do not try to measure everything; rather be selective of what measures will help to understand the health of aprocess. Chapter 5 will discuss the use of CSFs, KPIs and activity metrics. A major mistake many organizations make is trying to do too much in the beginning. Be smart about what you choose to measure.

Question: What do you want to measure?

Answer: Talk to the business, the customers and IT management. Use the service catalogue as your starting point as well as the service level requirements (SLRs) of the different customers. This is the place where you start with the end in mind. What you should measure is that which is important to the business.

Compile a list of what you should measure driven by business requirements. Don't try to cover every single eventuality or possible metric in the world. Make it simple. The number of items you should measure can grow rapidly. So too can the number of metrics and measurements.

Identify and link the following items:

- Corporate vision, mission, goals and objectives
- IT vision, mission, goals and objectives
- CSFs, KPIs, metrics and measurements
- Service level targets
- Service provider personnel.

Inputs include (note some of these can also be input into other steps):

- SLRs and targets
- Service review meeting
- Service portfolio and the service catalogue
- Vision and mission statements
- Corporate, divisional and departmental goals and objectives
- Legislative requirements
- Governance requirements
- Budget cycle
- Measurement results and reports, e.g. balanced scorecard
- Customer satisfaction surveys
- Service operation plan
- Service models
- Service design package
- Budgeting and accounting requirements
- Benchmark data
- Baseline data
- Risk assessments and risk mitigation plans.

Every organization may find that they have limitations on what can actually be measured. If you cannot measure something, then it should not appear in an SLA.

Question: What can you actually measure?

Answer: Start by listing the tools you currently have in place. These tools will include service management tools, monitoring tools, reporting tools, investigation tools and others. Compile a list of what each tool can currently measure without any configuration or customization.

Question: Where do you actually find the information?

Answer: The information is found within each service, process, procedure and work instruction. The tools are merely a way to collect and provide the data. Look at existing reports and databases. What data is

currently being collected and what data is being reported on? (These two things are often not the same although of course they should be.)

To produce the final definition of what you will measure perform a gap analysis between the data collected and the data being reported on. Report the gap analysis information back to the business, the customers and IT management. It is possible that new tools are required or that configuration or customization is required to be able to measure what is needed.

The following are some other potential areas for measurement:

- **Service levels** As well as normal SLAs targets we may need to collect availability management measures such as mean time to repair (MTTR) and mean time to restore service (MTRS), which are also used by problem management.
- **Customer satisfaction** Surveys are conducted on a continual basis to measure and track how satisfied customers are with the IT organization.
- **Business impact** Measure what actions are invoked for any disruption in service that adversely affects the customer's business operation, processes or its own customers.
- **Supplier performance** Whenever an organization has entered into a supplier relationship where some services or parts of services have been outsourced or co-sourced it is important to measure the performance of the supplier.
- **Market performance** This ensures the services remain aligned with those being delivered by other service providers in the IT service delivery community.

One of CSI's key sets of activities is to measure, analyse and report on IT services and IT service management (ITSM) results. Measurements produce data, which should be analysed over time to produce a trend. This will tell a story that may be good or bad. It is essential that measurements of this kind have ongoing relevance. What was important to know last year may no longer be pertinent this year.

4.1.5.3 Step 3 – Gather the data

Key message

Gathering the data is synonymous with service measurement (see section 5.4).

Gathering data requires having monitoring in place. Monitoring could be executed using technology such as application, system and component monitoring tools as used in the event management process (documented in service operation) or even be a manual process for certain tasks. The accuracy and integrity of the data should always be maintained.

Quality is the key objective of monitoring for CSI. Monitoring will therefore focus on the effectiveness and efficiency of a service, process, tool, organization or configuration item (CI). The emphasis is not on assuring real-time service performance; rather it is on identifying where improvements can be made to the existing level of service, or IT performance. Monitoring for CSI will therefore tend to focus on detecting exceptions and resolutions. For example, CSI is not as interested in whether an incident was resolved, but whether it was resolved within the agreed time, and whether future incidents can be prevented.

CSI is not only interested in exceptions, though. If an SLA is consistently met over time, CSI will also be interested in determining whether that level of performance can be sustained at a lower cost or whether it needs to be upgraded to an even better level of performance because of changing business requirements. CSI may therefore also need access to regular performance reports.

However since CSI is unlikely to need, or be able to cope with, the vast quantities of data that are produced by all monitoring activity, they will most likely focus on a specific subset of monitoring at any given time. This could be determined by input from the business or improvements to technology.

When a new service is being designed or an existing one changed, this is a perfect opportunity to ensure that what CSI needs to monitor is designed into the service requirements (see *ITIL Service Design*).

This has two main implications:

- Monitoring for CSI will change over time. They may be interested in monitoring the messaging service one quarter, and then move on to look at human resources (HR)systems in the next quarter.
- This means that service operation and CSI need to build a process which will help them to agree on what areas need to be monitored and for what purpose.

It is important to remember that there are three types of metrics that an organization will need to collect to support CSI and other process activities:

- **Technology metrics** These are often associated with component and application-based metrics such as performance, availability etc.
- **Process metrics** These are captured in the form of CSFs, KPIs and activity metrics for the service management processes. These metrics can help determine the overall health of a process. KPIs can help answer key questions on quality, performance, value and compliance in following the process. CSI would use these metrics as input in identifying improvement opportunities for each process.
- **Service metrics** These are the results of the end-to-end service. Technology metrics are normally used to help compute the service metrics.

Question: What needs to be gathered?

Answer: You gather whatever data has been identified as both needed and measurable. Not all data is gathered automatically so manual procedures will have to be implemented as well. A lot of data is entered manually by people. It is important to ensure that policies are in place to drive the right behaviour.

As much as possible, you need to standardize the data structure through policies and published standards. For example, how do you enter names in your tools – John Smith; Smith, John; or J. Smith? These can be the same or different individuals. Having three different ways of entering the same name would slow down trend analysisand severely impede any CSI initiative.

Question: Where do you actually find the information?

Answer: IT service management tools, monitoring tools, reporting tools, investigation tools, existing reports and other sources.

Gathering data is defined as the act of monitoring and data collection. This activity needs to clearly define:

- Who is responsible for monitoring and gathering the data?
- How will the data be gathered?
- When and how often is the data gathered?
- Criteria to evaluate the integrity of the data.

The answers will be different for every organization.

Service monitoring allows weak areas to be identified, so that remedial action can be taken (if there is a justifiable business case), thus improving future service quality. Service monitoring also can show where customer actions are causing the fault and thus lead to identifying where working efficiency and/or training can be improved.

Service monitoring should also address both internal and external suppliers since their performance must be evaluated and managed as well.

Service management monitoring helps determine the health and welfare of service management processes in the following manner:

- **Process compliance** Are the processes being followed? Process compliance seeks to monitor the compliance of the IT organization to the new or modified service management processes and also the use of the authorized service management tool that was implemented.
- **Quality** How well are the processes working? Monitor the individual or key activities as they relate to the objectives of the end-to-end process.
- **Performance** How fast or slow? Monitor the process efficiency such as throughput or cycle times.
- **Value** Is this making a difference? Monitor the effectiveness and perceived value of the process to the stakeholders and the IT staff executing the process activities.
- **Volume** To determine the loading and throughput on the service management processes (e.g. number of incidents or number of changes).

Monitoring is often associated with automated monitoring of infrastructure components for performance such as availability or capacity etc., but monitoring should also be used for monitoring staff behaviour such as adherence to process activities and use of authorized tools, as well as project schedules and budgets.

Exceptions and alerts need to be considered during the monitoring activity as they can serve as early warning indicators that services are failing. Sometimes the exceptions and alerts will come from tools, but

they will often come from those who are using the service or service management processes. These alerts should not be ignored.

Inputs to gathering the data include:

- New business requirements
- Existing SLAs
- Existing monitoring and data capture capability
- Plans from other processes, e.g. availability management and capacity management
- The CSI register and existing service improvement plans (SIPs)
- Previous trend analysis reports
- List of what you should measure
- List of what you can measure
- Gap analysis report
- List of what to measure
- Customer satisfaction surveys.

Figure 4.2 and Table 4.2 show the common procedures to follow in monitoring.

Figure 4.2 Monitoring and data collection procedures

Table 4.2 Monitoring and data collection procedures

Tasks	Procedures
Task 1	Based on service improvement strategies, goals and objectives plus the business requirements, determine what

	services, systems, applications and/orcomponents as well as service management process activities will require monitoring. Specify monitoring requirements. Define data collection requirements, changes in budgets. Document the outcome. Get agreement with internal IT, customers, suppliers as appropriate.
Task 2	Determine frequency of monitoring and data gathering. Determine method of monitoring and data gathering.
Task 3	Define tools required for monitoring and data gathering. Build, purchase or modify tools for monitoring and data gathering. Test the tool. Install the tool.
Task 4	Write monitoring procedures and work instructions when required for monitoring and data collection.
Task 5	Produce and communicate monitoring and data collection plan. Get approval from internal IT and external vendors who may be impacted.
Task 6	Update availability and capacity plans if required.
Task 7	Begin monitoring and data collection. Process data into a logical grouping and report format. Review data to ensure the data makes sense.

Note: Monitoring and event management solutions become, by definition, services in their own right and hence require continual assessment, effectiveness reviews, provisioning and change processes etc.

Outputs from gathering the data include:

- Updated availability and capacity plans
- Monitoring procedures
- Identified tools to use
- Monitoring plan
- Input on IT capability
- Collection of data
- Agreement on the integrity of the data.

It is also important in this activity to look at the data that was collected and ask whether it makes any sense.

Example of poor data management

An organization that was developing some management information activities asked a consultant to review the data they had collected. The data was for incident management and the service desk. It was provided in a spreadsheet format and when the consultant opened the spreadsheet it showed that for the month the organization had opened approximately 42,000 new incidents and 65,000 incidents were closed on the first contact. It is hard to close more incidents than were opened – in other words the data did not make sense.
However, all is not lost. Even if the data did not make any sense, it provides insight into the ability to monitor and gather data, the tools that are used to supportmonitoring and data gathering, and the procedures for processing the raw data into a report that can be used for analysis. When investigating the example above, it was discovered that it was a combination on how data was pulled from the tools plus human error in inputting the data into a spreadsheet. There was no check and balance before the data was actually processed and presented to key people in the organization.

4.1.5.4 Step 4 – Process the data

This step is to convert the data into the required format and for the required audience. Follow the trail from metric to KPI to CSF, all the way back to the vision if necessary (see Figure 4.1).

Report-generating technologies are typically used at this stage as various amounts of data are condensed into information for use in the analysis activity. The data is also typically put into a format that provides an end-to-end perspective on the overall performance of a service. This activity begins the transformation of raw data into packaged information. Use the information to develop insight into the performance of the service and/or processes. Process the data into information (by creating logical groupings), which provides a better means to analyse the information and data – the next step in CSI.

The output of logical groupings could be in spreadsheets, reports generated directly from the service management tool suite, system monitoring and reporting tools, or telephony tools such as an automatic call distribution tool.

Processing the data is an important CSI activity that is often overlooked. While monitoring and collecting data on a single infrastructure component is important, it is also important to understand that component's impact on the larger infrastructure and IT service. Knowing that a server was up 99.99% of the time is one thing; knowing that no one could access the server is another. An example of processing the data is taking the data from monitoring of individual components, such as the mainframe,applications, WAN, LAN, servers etc., and processing it into a structure of an end-to-end service from the customer's perspective.

Key questions that need to be addressed in the processing activity are:

- What is the frequency of processing the data? This could be hourly, daily, weekly or monthly. When introducing a new service or service management process it is a good idea to monitor and process in shorter intervals than longer intervals. How often analysis and trend investigation activities take place will drive how often the data is processed.
- What format is required for the output? This is also driven by how analysis is carried out and ultimately how the information is used.
- What tools and systems can be used for processing the data?

- How do we evaluate the accuracy of the processed data?

There are two aspects to processing data. One is automated and the other is manual. While both are important and contribute greatly to the measuring process, accuracy is a major differentiator between the two types. The accuracy of the automated data gathering and processing is not the issue here. Nearly all CSI-related data will be gathered by automated means. Human data gathering and processing is the issue. It is important for staff to properly document their compliance activities, to update logs and records. Common excuses are that people are too busy, that this is not important or that it is not their job. Ongoing communication about the benefits of performing administrative tasks is of utmost importance. Tying these administrative tasks to job performance is one way to alleviate this issue.

Inputs to processing data include:

- Data collected through monitoring
- Reporting requirements
- SLAs
- OLAs
- Service catalogue
- List of metrics, KPI, CSF, objectives and goals
- Report frequency
- Report template.

Figure 4.3 and Table 4.3 show common procedures for processing data.

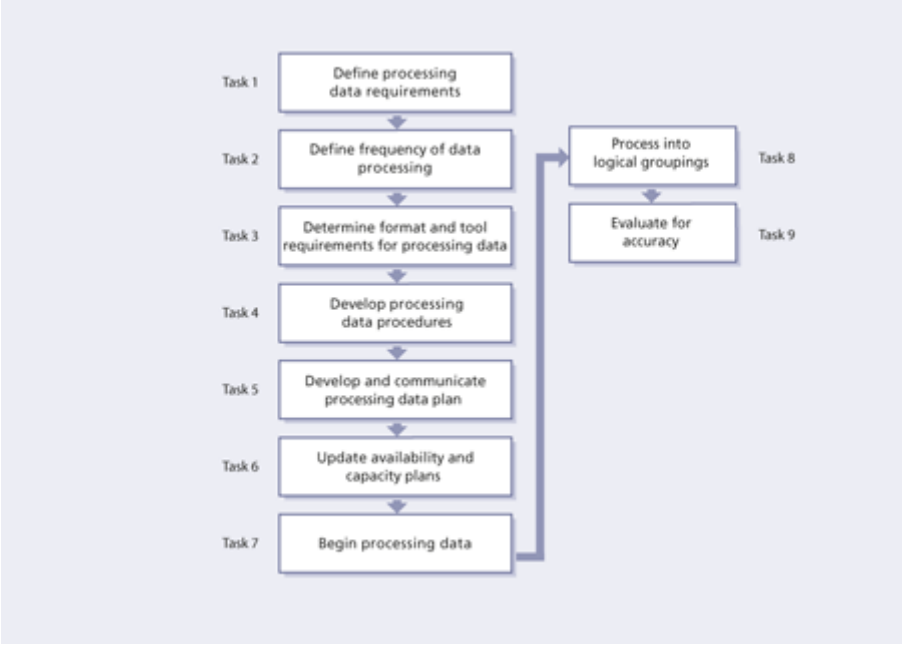


Figure 4.3 Common procedures for processing the data

A flow diagram is nice to look at and gracefully summarizes the procedure but it does not contain all the required information. It is important to translate the flow diagram in a more meaningful way so that people

can understand the procedure with the appropriate level of detail, including roles and responsibilities, timeframes, inputs and outputs, and more.

Table 4.3 Procedures for processing the data

Tasks	Procedures
Task 1	Based on strategy, goals and SLAs, define the data processing requirements.
Task 2	Determine frequency of processing the data. Determine method of processing the data.
Task 3	Identify and document the format of logical grouping of data elements. Define tools required for processing data. Build, purchase or modify tools for measuring. Test tool. Install tool.
Task 4	Develop processing data procedures. Train people on procedures.
Task 5	Develop and communicate monitoring plan. Get approval from internal IT and external vendors who may be impacted.
Task 6	Update availability and capacity plans if required.
Task 7	Begin the data processing.
Task 8	Process into logical groupings.
Task 9	Evaluate processed data for accuracy.

While it is important to identify the outputs of each activity such as data and decisions, it is even more important to determine the output of the procedure, the level of detail, the quality, the format etc.

Examples of outputs of processing data from procedures include:

- Updated availability and capacity plans
- Reports
- Logical groupings of data ready for analysis.

4.1.5.5 Step 5 – Analyse the information and data

Your organization's service desk has a trend of reduced call volumes consistently over the last four months. Even though this is a trend, you need to ask yourself the question: 'Is this a good trend or a bad trend?' You don't know if the call reduction is because you have reduced the number of recurring errors in the infrastructure by good problem management activities or if the customers feel that the service desk doesn't provide any value and have started bypassing the service desk and going directly to second-level support groups.

Data analysis transforms the information into knowledge of the events that are affecting the organization. More skill and experience is required to perform data analysis than data gathering and processing. Verification against goals and objectives is expected during this activity. This verification validates that objectives are being supported and value is being added. It is not sufficient to simply produce graphs of various types but to document the observations and conclusions.

Question: What do you actually analyse?

Answer: Once the data is processed into information, you can then analyse the results, looking for answers to questions such as:

- Are there any clear trends?
- Are they positive or negative trends?
- Are changes required?
- Are we operating according to plan?
- Are we meeting targets?
- Are improvements required?
- Are there underlying structural problems?

In this step you apply knowledge to your information. Without this, you have nothing more than sets of numbers showing metrics that are meaningless. It is not enough to simply look at this month's figures and accept them without question, even if they meet SLA targets. You should analyse the figures to stay ahead of the game. Without analysis you merely have information. With analysis you have knowledge. If you find anomalies or poor results, then look for ways to improve.

It is interesting to note the number of job titles for IT professionals that contain the word 'analyst' and even more surprising to discover that few of these professionals actually analyse anything. This step takes time. It requires concentration, knowledge, skills, experience etc. One of the major assumptions is that the automated processing, reporting, monitoring tool has actually done the analysis. Too often people simply point at a trend and say, 'Look, numbers have gone up over the last quarter.' However, key questions need to be asked, such as:

- Is this good?
- Is this bad?
- Is this expected?
- Is this in line with targets?

- Are there any side effects (whether positive or negative) on any other process, component of the system, or service?

Combining multiple data points on a graph may look nice but it is important to know what it means. There is a saying 'A picture is worth a thousand words'; in analysing the data one needs to ask, 'Which thousand words?' To transform this data into knowledge, compare the information from Step 3 against the requirements from Step 2 and what could realistically be measured from this step.

Be sure also to compare the information with the clearly defined objectives with measurable targets that were set in the service design, transition and operations lifecycle stages. Seek confirmation that these objectives and the milestones were reached. If not, have improvement initiatives been implemented? If so, then the CSI activities start again by gathering data, processing data and analysing data to identify if the desired improvement in service quality has been achieved. At the completion of each significant stage or milestone, conduct a review to ensure the objectives have been met. It is possible here to use the post-implementation review (PIR) from the change management process. The PIR will include a review of supporting documentation and the general awareness among staff of the refined processes or service. A comparison is required of what has been achieved against the original goals.

During the analysis activity, but after the results are compiled and the trends analysed and evaluated, it is recommended that internal meetings be held within IT managers to review the results and collectively identify improvement opportunities. It is important to have these internal meetings before you begin presenting and using the information, which is the next activity of CSI. IT is a key player in determining how the results and any actions items are presented to the business.

This puts IT in a better position to formulate a plan of presenting the results and any action items to the business and senior IT management. Throughout this publication the terms 'service' and 'service management' have been used extensively. IT is too often focused on managing the various systems used by the business, often (but incorrectly) equating service and system. A service is actually made up of systems as well as other entities such as people and suppliers. Therefore if an IT service provider wants to be perceived as a key player, it must move from a systems-based organization to a service-based organization. This transition will force the improvement of communication between the different IT silos that exist in many IT organizations.

Performing proper analysis on the data also places the business in a position to make strategic, tactical and operational decisions about whether there is a need for service improvement. Unfortunately, the analysis activity is often not performed. Whether this is because of lack of people with the right skills and/or simply a lack of time is unclear. What is clear is that without proper analysis, errors will continue to occur and mistakes will continue to be repeated. There will be little improvement.

Data analysis transforms the information into knowledge of the events that are affecting the organization. As an example, a sub-activity of capacity management isworkload management. This involves analysing the data to determine which customers use what resource, how they use the resource, when they use the resource and how this impacts the overall performance of the resource. You will also be able to see if there is a trend on the usage of the resource over a period of time. From an incremental improvement process this could lead to some focus on demand management, or influencing the behaviour of customers.

Consideration must be given to the skills required to analyse from both a technical viewpoint and from an interpretation viewpoint.

When analysing data, it is important to seek answers to questions such as:

- Are operations running according to plan? This could be a project plan, financial plan, availability plan, capacity plan or even an IT service continuity management(ITSCM) plan.
- Are targets defined in SLAs or the service catalogue being met?
- Are there underlying structural problems that can be identified?
- Are improvements required?
- Are there any trends? If so, what are the trends showing? Are they positive trends or negative trends?
- What is leading to or causing the trends?

Reviewing trends over a period of time is another important task. It is not good enough to see a 'snapshot' of a data point at a specific moment in time, but to look at the data points over a period of time. How did we do this month compared with last month, this quarter compared with last quarter, this year compared with last year?

It is not enough only to look at the results; one needs to look at what led to the results for the current period. If we had a bad month, was it because of an anomaly? Is this a demonstrable trend or simply a one-off?

Example of the benefits of trend analysis

When one organization started performing trend analysis activities around incident management, it discovered that the number of incidents increased for a one month period every three months. When staff investigated the cause, they found it was tied directly to a quarterly release of an application change. This provided statistical data for them to review the effectiveness of their change management and release and deployment management processes as well as understand the impact each release would have on the service desk with the number of increased call volumes. The service desk was also able to begin identifying key skill sets needed to support this specific application.

Trends are an indicator that more analysis is needed to understand what is causing it. When a trend goes up or down it is a signal that further investigation is needed to determine if it is positive or negative.

Example of different ways of interpreting trends

A change manager communicates that the change management process is doing well because the volume of requests for changes has steadily decreased. Is this positive or negative? If problem management is working well, it could be positive as recurring incidents are removed, therefore fewer changes are required as the infrastructure is more stable. However, if users have stopped submitting requests for changes because the process is not meeting expectations, the trend is negative.

Without analysis the data is merely information. With analysis come improvement opportunities.

Throughout CSI, assessment should identify whether targets were achieved and, if so, whether new targets (and therefore new KPIs) need to be defined. If targets were achieved but the perception has not improved, then new targets may need to be set and new measures put in place to ensure that these new targets are being met.

When analysing the results from process metrics keep in mind that a process will only be as efficient as its limited bottleneck activity. So if the analysis shows that a process activity is not efficient and continually creates a bottleneck then this would be a logical place to begin looking for a process improvement opportunity.

Inputs include:

- Results of the monitored data
- Existing KPIs and targets
- Perceptions from customer satisfaction surveys etc.

4.1.5.6 Step 6 – Present and use the information

Key message

Presenting the information is synonymous with service reporting (see section 5.7)

The sixth step is to take our knowledge, which is represented in the reports, monitors, action plans, reviews, evaluations and opportunities, and present it to the target audience in a clear, digestible and timely way. Consider the target audience; make sure that you identify exceptions to the service, benefits that have been revealed, or can be expected. Data gathering occurs at the operational level of an organization. Format this data into knowledge that all levels can appreciate and gain insight into their needs and expectations.

This stage involves presenting the information in a format that is understandable, at the right level, provides value, notes exceptions to service, identifies benefits that were revealed during the time period, and allows those receiving the information to make strategic, tactical and operational decisions. In other words, present the information in the manner that makes it the most useful for the target audience.

Most organizations create reports and present information to some extent or another; however, it is often not done well. Many organizations simply take the gathered raw data (often straight from the tool) and report it to everyone, without necessarily processing or analysing the data. The report should emphasize and ideally highlight areas where the recipient needs to take action.

The other issue often associated with presenting and using information is that it is overdone. Managers at all levels are bombarded with too many emails, too many meetings, too many reports. The reality is that the managers often don't need this information or, at the very least, not in that format. It is often unclear what role the manager has in making decisions and providing guidance on improvement programmes.

As we have discussed, CSI is an ongoing activity of monitoring and gathering data, processing the data into logical groupings, and analysing it in order to meet targets, and identify trends and improvement opportunities. There is no value in all the work done to this point if we don't do a good job of presenting our findings and then using them to make decisions that will lead to improvements.

Begin with the end in mind is habit number 2 in Stephen Covey's *The Seven Habits of Highly Effective People*.[3] Even though the book is about personal leadership, the habit holds true with presenting and using information. In addition to understanding the target audience, it is also important to understand the

purpose of any information being presented. If the purpose and value cannot be articulated, then it is important to question if it is needed at all.

There are usually four distinct audiences:

- **The customers** Their real need is to understand whether IT delivered the service they promised at the levels they promised and, if not, what improvements are being implemented to improve the situation.
- **Senior IT management** This group is often focused on the results surrounding CSFs and KPIs, such as customer satisfaction, actual versus plan, and costing and revenue targets. Information provided at this level helps determine strategic and tactical improvements on a larger scale. Senior IT management often wants this type of information provided in the form of a balanced scorecard or IT scorecard format to see the big picture at one glance.
- **Internal IT** This group is often interested in KPIs and activity metrics that help them plan, coordinate, schedule and identify incremental improvement opportunities.
- **Suppliers** This group will be interested in KPIs and activity metrics related to their own services and performance. Suppliers may also be targeted with improvement initiatives.

Often there is a gap between what IT reports and what is of interest to the business. IT is famous for reporting availability in percentages such as '99.85% available'. In most cases this is not calculated from an end-to-end perspective but only considers mainframe or server availability or application availability; it often doesn't take into consideration LAN/WAN or desktop downtime. In reality, most people in IT don't know the difference between 99.95% and 99.99% availability, let alone other people in the business. Yet reports continue to show availability achievements in percentages. What the business really wants to understand is the number of outages that occurred and the duration of the outages with an analysis describing the impact on the business processes, in essence, unavailability expressed in a commonly understood measure – time. Of course what the business is really interested in is what the service provider is going to do to prevent it happening again.

Now more than ever, IT managers must invest the time to understand specific business goals and translate IT metrics to reflect an impact against these goals. Businesses invest in tools and services that affect productivity, and support should be one of those services. The major challenge, and one that can be met, is to communicate effectively the business benefits of a well-run IT support group. The starting point is a new perspective on goals, measures, reporting and how IT actions affect business results. You will then be prepared to answer the question: 'How does IT help to generate value for your company?'

Although most reports tend to concentrate on areas where things are not going as well as hoped for, do not forget to report on the good news as well. A report showing improvement trends is IT services' best marketing vehicle. It is vitally important that reports show whether CSI has actually improved the overall service provision and, if it has not, the actions taken to rectify the situation.

Figure 4.4 is an example of an SLA monitoring chart that provides a visual representation of an organization's ability to meet defined targets over a period of months.

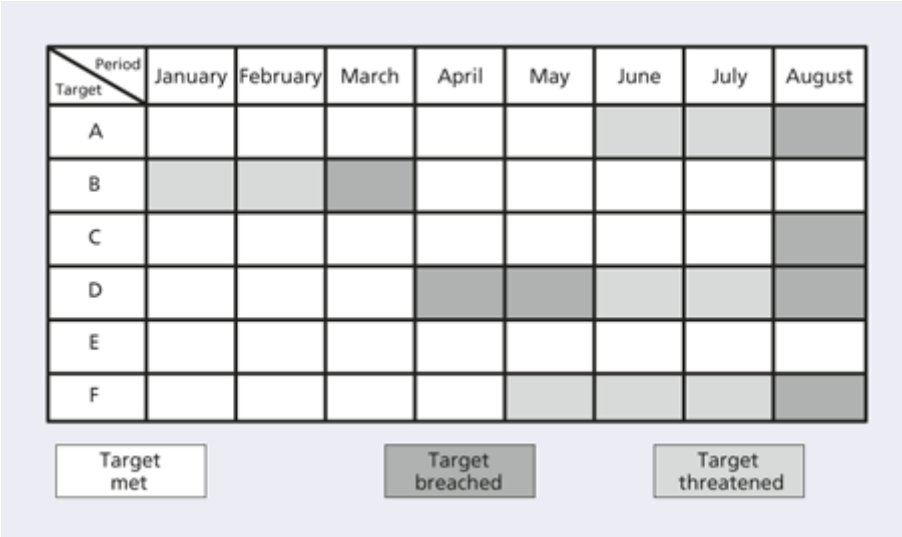


Figure 4.4 Service level achievement chart

These are some of the common problems associated with the presenting and reporting activity:

- Everyone (business, senior management and IT managers) gets the same report.
- The format is not what people want. It is important to understand the audience and how they like to receive information. Some like the information in text format, some in graphs, some in pie charts etc. It is hard to please everyone, but getting agreement on the report format is a step in the right direction.

This is why many organizations are moving to a balanced scorecard or IT scorecard concept. This concept can start at the business level, then the IT level, and then functional groups and/or services within IT.

- Lack of an executive summary – the executive summary should discuss the current results, what led to the results and what actions have or will be taken to address any issues.
- Reports are not linked to any baseline, IT scorecard or balanced scorecard.
- Too much supporting data is provided.
- Reports are presented in terms that are not understandable. For example, availability is reported in percentages when the business often is interested in knowing the number, duration and impact of outages.

The resources required to produce, verify and distribute reports should not be underestimated. Even with automation, this can be a time-consuming activity.

When measuring and reporting, IT managers need to shift from their normal way of reporting to a more business view that the business can really understand. As discussed above, the traditional IT approach on measuring and reporting availability is to present the results in percentages, but these are often at a component level and not at the service level. Availability when measured and reported should reflect the experience of the customer. Below are the common measurements that are meaningful to a customer:

- Number of outages on each service, e.g. there were two outages this month on Service 1
- Duration of outages for each service, e.g. Service 1 outages lasted 179 minutes
- The impact of the outages to each business, e.g. Business 1 uses five services; there were 11 outages, whose total duration was 1,749 minutes. During this time the business was unable to generate revenue.

Inputs include:

- Collated information
- Format details and templates etc.
- Stakeholder contact details.

Note: The results from Step 6 may indicate the need for improvement initiatives. In all such cases use the CSI register to document the requirements and initiatives.

4.1.5.7 Step 7 – Implement improvement

Use the knowledge gained and combine it with previous experience to make informed decisions about optimizing, improving and correcting services. Managers need to identify issues and present solutions.

This stage may include any number of activities such as approval of improvement activities, prioritization and submitting a business case, integration with change management, integration with other lifecycle stages, and guidance on how to manage an ongoing improvement project successfully, and on checking whether the improvement actually achieved its objective.

Example of poor advice
An organization hired an expensive consulting firm to assess the maturity of the processes against the ITIL framework. The report from the consulting organization had the following observation and recommendation about the incident management process:
'*The help desk is not doing incident management the way ITIL does. Our recommendation is that you must implement incident management.*'
The reaction from the customer was simple. They fired the consulting organization.

CSI identifies many opportunities for improvement, but organizations cannot afford to implement all of them. As discussed earlier, an organization needs to prioritize improvement activities for its goals, objectives, return on investment (ROI), types of service breaches etc., and document them in the CSI register. Improvement initiatives can also be externally driven by regulatory requirements, changes in competition, or even political decisions.

If organizations were implementing improvement according to CSI, there would be no need for this publication. Improvement often takes place in reaction to a single eventthat caused a (severe) outage to part or all of the organization. At other times, minor problems are noticed and specific improvements are implemented in no relation to the priorities of the organization, thus taking valuable resources away from real emergencies. This is common practice but obviously not best practice.

After a decision to improve a service and/or service management process is made, then the service lifecycle continues. A new service strategy may be defined, service design builds the changes,

service transition implements the changes into production and then service operation manages the day-to-day operations of the service and/or service management processes. Keep in mind that CSI activities continue through each stage of the service lifecycle.

Each service lifecycle stage requires resources to build or modify the services and/or service management processes, potential new technology or modifications to existing technology, potential changes to KPIs and other metrics, and possibly even new or modified OLAs or underpinning contracts (UCs) to support SLAs. Communication, training and documentation are required to move a new or improved service, tool or service management process into production.

Example of improvement being implemented

A financial organization with a strategically important website continually failed to meet its operational targets, especially with regard to the quality of service delivered by the site. The prime reason for this was its lack of focus on the monitoring of operational events, service availability and response. This situation was allowed to develop until senior business managers demanded action from the senior IT management. There were major repercussions, and reviews were undertaken to determine the underlying cause of the failure to meet an acceptable quality of service. After considerable pain and disruption, an operations group was identified to monitor this particular service. A part of the requirement was the establishment of weekly internal reviews and weekly reports on operational performance. Operational events were immediately investigated whenever they occurred and were individually reviewed after resolution. An improvement team was established, with representation from all areas, to implement the recommendations from the reviews and the feedback from the monitoring group. This eventually resulted in considerable improvement in the quality of service delivered to the business and its customers.

Often steps are forgotten or are taken for granted, or someone assumes that someone else has completed the step. This indicates a breakdown in the process and a lack of understanding of roles and responsibilities. The harsh reality is that some steps are overdone while others are incomplete or overlooked.

There are various levels of management in an organization; when implementing improvements it is important to understand which level to focus their activities on. Managers need to show overall performance and improvement. Directors need to show that quality and performance targets are being met, while risk is being minimized. Overall, senior management need to know what is going on so they can make informed choices and exercise judgement. Each level has its own perspective. Understanding these perspectives is where maximum value of information is leveraged.

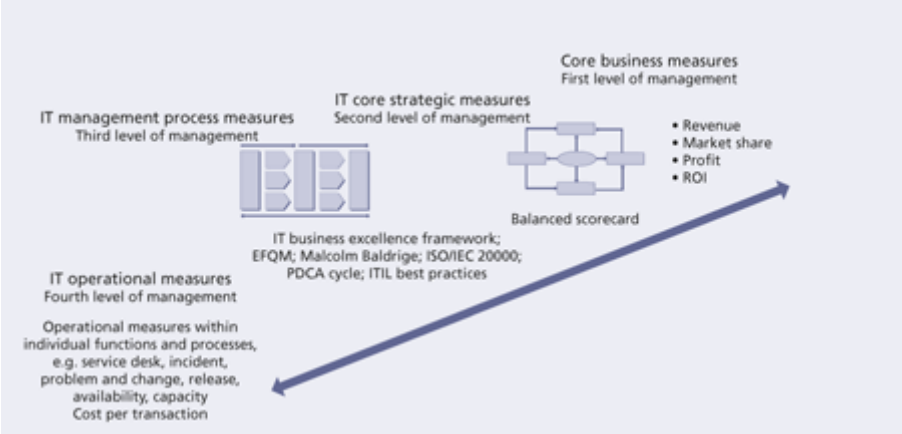


Figure 4.5 First- to fourth-order drivers

Understanding the level your intended audience occupies and their drivers helps you present the issues and benefits of your process in the correct manner. At the highest level of the organization are the strategic thinkers. Reports need to be short, quick to read and aligned to their drivers. Discussions about risk avoidance, protecting the image or brand of the organization, profitability and cost savings are compelling reasons to support your improvement efforts.

The second level of management consists of vice presidents and directors. Reports can be more detailed, but need to summarize findings over time. Identifying how processes support the business objectives, early warning around issues that place the business at risk, and alignment to existing measurement frameworks that they use are strong methods you can use to sell the process benefits to them.

The third level of management consists of managers and high level supervisors. Compliance to stated objectives, overall team and process performance, insight intoresource constraints and continual improvement initiatives are their drivers. Measurements and reports need to market how these are being supported by the process outputs.

Lastly at the fourth level of the hierarchy are the staff members and team leaders. At a personal level, the personal benefits need to be emphasized. Therefore metrics that show their individual performance, provide recognition of their skills (and gaps in skills) and identify training opportunities are essential in getting these people to participate in the processes willingly.

The four levels of management are shown in Figure 4.5.

Inputs include:

- Knowledge gained from presenting and using the information
- Agreed implementation plans (from Step 6)
- A CSI register for those initiatives that have been initiated from other sources.

Note: Implementing improvement is also discussed in section 5.1.2 and assessments are discussed in section 5.2.

4.1.6 Triggers, inputs, outputs and interfaces

Monitoring to identify improvement opportunities is and must be an ongoing process. New incentives may trigger additional measurement activity such as changing business requirements, poor performance with a process or spiralling costs.

Many inputs and outputs to the process are documented within the steps discussed earlier but examples of key inputs include:

- Service catalogue
- SLRs
- The service review meeting
- Vision and mission statements
- Corporate, divisional and departmental goals and objectives
- Legislative requirements
- Governance requirements
- Budget cycle
- Customer satisfaction surveys
- The overall IT strategy
- Market expectations (especially in relation to competitive IT service providers)
- New technology drivers (e.g. cloud based delivery and external hosting)
- Flexible commercial models (e.g. low capital expenditure and high operational expenditure commercial models, and rental models).

4.1.6.1 Interfaces

In order to support improvement activities it is important to have CSI integrated within each lifecycle stage including the underlying processes residing in each lifecycle stage. Each step of the CSI lifecycle will be involved in every one of the other lifecycle stages.

Examples include monitoring the progress of strategies, standards, policies and architectural decisions that have been made and implemented. Service strategy will also analyse results associated with implemented strategies, policies and standards.

Within the service design stage, monitoring and gathering data are associated with creating and modifying services and service management processes. This part of theservice lifecycle also measures against the effectiveness and ability to measure CSFs and KPIs that were defined through gathering business requirements. It is during service design that the definition of what should be measured is produced. Service design analyses current results of design and project activities. Trends are also noted with results compared against the design goals. Service design also identifies improvement opportunities and analyses the effectiveness and ability to measure CSFs and KPIs that were defined when gathering business requirements.

Service transition develops and tests the monitoring procedures and criteria to be used during and after implementation. Service transition monitors and gathers data on the actual release into production of

services and service management processes. Service transition develops the monitoring procedures and criteria to be used during and after implementation.

It is during the service operation lifecycle stage that the actual monitoring of services in the live environment takes place. People working in the service operation functions will play a large part in the processing activity. Service operation staff provide input into what can be measured and processed into logical groupings, and then process the data. Service operation staff would also be responsible for taking the component data and processing it in the format to provide a better end-to-end perspective of the service achievements. Service operation staff analyse current results as well as trends over a period of time. Service operation staff also identify both incremental and large-scale improvement opportunities, providing input into what can be measured and processed into logical groupings. They also perform the actual data processing.

The seven-step improvement process receives and collects the data as an input. If there is a CSI functional group within an organization, it can be the single point for combining all analysis, trend data and comparison of results to targets. This group could then review all proposed improvement opportunities and help prioritize the opportunities and finally make a consolidated recommendation to senior management. For smaller organizations, this may fall to an individual or smaller group acting as a coordinating point and owning CSI. This is a key point. Too often data is gathered in the various technical domains never to be heard of again. Designating a CSI group provides a single place in the organization for all the data to reside and be analysed.

4.1.7 Role of other processes in gathering and processing the data (Steps 3 and 4)

All the ITIL processes have responsibility for continual improvement of the process itself. The process metrics will indicate where improvements or cost reductions can be made. Some of the key processes related to general improvement are documented below.

4.1.7.1 Service level management

The SLM process is fully documented in *ITIL Service Design*. It is important the CSI is involved in the design of SLM and has a constant interface with the SLM team to ensure that measurable targets are created from which to identify potential service improvements.

The SLM process plays a key role in CSI activities and supports the seven-step improvement process by helping to drive what to measure and monitoring requirements, and by reporting service level achievements. This provides input into CSI activities and helps prioritize improvement projects.

SLM is essential in any organization so that the levels of IT service needed to support the business can be determined and monitoring can be initiated to identify whether the required service levels are being achieved.

If an organization is outsourcing its service provision to a third party, the issue of service improvement should be discussed at the outset and covered (and budgeted for) in the contract, otherwise there is no incentive during the lifetime of the contract for suppliers to improve service targets if they are already meeting contractual obligations and additional expenditure is needed to make the improvements.

SLM plays a key role in the data gathering activity as SLM is responsible for defining not only business requirements but also IT's capabilities to achieve them:

- SLM needs to look at what is happening with the monitoring data to ensure that end-to-end service performance is being monitored and analysed.
- SLM should also identify who gets the data, whether any analysis takes place on the data before it is presented, and if any trend evaluation is undertaken to understand the performance over a period of time. This information will be helpful in following CSI activities.
- Through the negotiation process with the business, SLM would define what to measure and which aspects to report. This would in turn drive the monitoring and data collection requirements. If there is no capability to monitor and/or collect data on an item then it should not appear in the SLA. SLM should be a part of the reviewprocess to monitor results.
- SLM is responsible for developing and getting agreement on OLAs and external UCs that require internal or external monitoring.

SLM supports the CSI data processing activity by:

- Ensuring that the SLAs only incorporate measurements that truly can be measured and reported on
- Negotiating and documenting OLAs and UCs that define the required measurements
- Reviewing the results of the processed data from an end-to-end approach
- Helping define the reporting frequency of processing and reporting formats.

4.1.7.2 Availability management and capacity management

Availability management and capacity management support the data processing activities of CSI by:

- Providing significant input into existing monitoring and data collection capabilities and tool requirements to meet new data collection requirements, and ensuring the availability and capacity plans are updated to reflect new or modified monitoring and data collection requirements
- Being accountable for the actual infrastructure monitoring and data collection activities that take place; therefore roles and responsibilities need to be defined and the roles filled with properly skilled and trained staff
- Being accountable for ensuring tools are in place to gather data
- Being accountable for ensuring that the actual monitoring and data collection activities are consistently performed
- Being responsible for processing the data at a component level and then working with SLM to provide service level data
- Processing data on KPIs such as availability or performance measures
- Utilizing the agreed reporting formats
- Analysing processed data for accuracy.

4.1.7.3 Event management, incident management and service desk

Event management, incident management and the service desk support the data processing activities of CSI:

- Through incident management defining monitoring requirements to support event and incident detection through automation; incident management also has the ability to automatically open incidents and/or auto-escalate incidents
- Through event management automatically monitoring events and producing alerts, some of which may require CSI activities to correct
- Through event and incident monitoring identifying abnormal situations and conditions, which helps with predicting and pre-empting situations and conditions thereby avoiding possible service and component failures
- By monitoring the response times, repair times, resolution times and incident escalations
- By monitoring telephony items such as call volumes, average speed of answer, call abandonment rates etc. so that immediate action can be taken when there is an increase in contacts to the service desk; this is important for the service desk as a single point of contact; it also applies to those service desks that provide support via email and the web
- By processing data on incidents and service requests such as who is using the service desk and what is the nature of the incidents
- By collecting and processing data on KPIs such as MTRS and percentage of incidents resolved within service targets
- By processing data for telephony statistics at the service desk such as number of inbound/outbound calls, average talk time, average speed of answer, abandoned calls etc.
- By utilizing the agreed reporting format
- By analysing processed data for accuracy.

4.1.7.4 Information security management

Information security management contributes to monitoring and data collection by:

- Defining security monitoring and data collection requirements
- Monitoring, verifying and tracking the levels of security according to the organizational security policies and guidelines
- Assisting in determining effects of security measures on the data monitoring and collection from the confidentiality (accessible only to those who should), integrity(data is accurate and not corrupted or not corruptible) and availability (data is available when needed) perspectives
- Processing response and resolution data on security incidents
- Creating trend analyses on security breaches
- Validating success of risk mitigation strategies
- Utilizing the agreed upon reporting format
- Analysing processed data for accuracy.

4.1.7.5 Financial management for IT services

Financial management for IT services is responsible for monitoring and collecting data associated with the actual expenditures versus budget and is able to provide input on questions such as whether costing or revenue targets are on track. Financial management for IT services should also monitor the ongoing cost per service etc.

In addition financial management for IT services will provide the necessary templates to assist CSI to create the budget and expenditure reports for the various improvement initiatives as well as providing the means to compute the ROI of the improvements.

4.1.8 Role of other processes in analysing the data (Step 5)

4.1.8.1 Service level management

SLM supports the CSI data analysis activity by:

- Analysing the service level achievements compared to SLAs and service level targets
- Documenting and reviewing trends over a period of time to identify any consistent patterns
- Identifying improvement opportunities
- Identifying the need to modify existing OLAs or UCs.

4.1.8.2 Availability management and capacity management

Availability management and capacity management support the CSI data analysis activity by:

- Analysing and identifying trends on component and service data
- Comparing results with prior months, quarters or annual reports
- Identifying the need for updating the requirement for improvement in gathering and processing data
- Analysing the performance of components against defined technical specifications
- Documenting and reviewing trends over a period of time to identify any consistent patterns
- Identifying improvement opportunities
- Analysing processed data for accuracy.

4.1.8.3 Incident management and service desk

Incident management and service desk support the CSI data analysis activity by:

- Documenting and reviewing incident trends on incidents, service requests and telephony statistics over a period of time to identify any consistent patterns
- Comparing results with prior months, quarters or annual reports
- Comparing results with agreed-to levels of service
- Identifying improvement opportunities
- Analysing processed data for accuracy.

4.1.8.4 Problem management

Problem management plays a key role in the analysis activity as this process supports other processes in identifying trends and performing root cause analysis. Problem management is usually associated with reducing incidents, but a good problem management process is also involved in helping define process-related problems as well as those associated with services.

Overall, problem management seeks to:

- Perform root cause investigation as to what is leading identified trends
- Recommend improvement opportunities
- Compare results with prior results
- Compare results to agreed service levels.

4.1.8.5 Information security management

Information security management relies on the activities of other processes to help determine the cause of security related incidents and problems. Information security management will submit requests for changes to implement corrections or for new updates to, for example, the anti-virus software. Other processes such as availability management (recoverability), capacity management (capacity and performance) and ITSCM (planning on how to handle crisis) will assist in planning longer term. In turn information security management will play a key role in assisting CSI regarding all security aspects of improvement initiatives or for security-related improvements by:

- Documenting and reviewing security incidents for the current time period
- Comparing results with prior results
- Identifying the need for a SIP or improvements
- Analysing processed data for accuracy.

4.1.9 Role of other processes in presenting and using the information (Step 6)

4.1.9.1 Service level management

SLM presents information to the business and discusses the service achievements for the current time period as well as any longer trends that were identified. These discussions should also include information about what led to the results and any incremental or fine-tuning actions required.

Overall, SLM:

- Conducts consistent service review meetings (internal and external)
- Supports the preparation of reports
- Updates the SLA monitoring (SLAM) chart
- Provides input into prioritizing improvement activities.

4.1.9.2 Availability management and capacity management

Availability management and capacity management support the CSI presentation activity by:

- Supporting preparation of the reports
- Providing input into prioritizing SIP or improvements
- Implementing incremental or fine-tuning activities that do not require business approval.

4.1.9.3 Incident management and service desk

Incident management and service desk support the CSI presentation activity by:

- Supporting preparation of the reports
- Providing input into prioritizing SIPs or improvements
- Implementing incremental or fine-tuning activities that do not require business approval.

4.1.9.4 Problem management

Problem management supports the CSI presentation activity by:

- Providing input into service improvement initiatives and prioritizing improvement initiatives
- Supporting preparation of the reports
- Providing input into prioritizing SIP or improvements
- Implementing incremental or fine-tuning activities that do not require business approval.

4.1.10 Role of other processes in implementing improvement (Step 7)

4.1.10.1 Change management

When CSI determines that an improvement to a service is warranted, a request for change (RFC) must be submitted. The RFC will be prioritized and categorized according to policies and procedures defined in the change management process. Release and deployment management, as a part of service transition, is responsible for moving this change to the live environment. Once the change is implemented, CSI is part of the PIR to assess the success or failure of the change. All non-standard changes should be assessed by staff involved in CSI.

4.1.10.2 Service level management

The SLM process often generates a good starting point for identifying improvement opportunities – and the service review process may drive this. Where an underlying difficulty that is adversely impacting service quality is identified, SLM should, in conjunction with problem management and availability management, log an improvement opportunity in the CSI register. SLM will then be involved in the later review and prioritization of the CSI register and in building appropriate SIPs to identify and implement whatever actions are necessary to overcome the difficulties and restore service quality. SIP initiatives may also focus on such issues as training, system testing and documentation. In these cases, the relevant people need to be involved and adequate feedback given to make improvements for the future. At any time, a number of separate initiatives that form part of the SIP may be running in parallel to address difficulties with a number of services.

Some organizations have established an annual budget line held by SLM from which SIP initiatives can be funded.

If an organization is outsourcing delivery of service to a third party, the issue of service improvement should be discussed at the outset and covered (and budgeted for) in the contract, otherwise there is no incentive during the lifetime of the contract for the supplier to improve service targets.

4.1.11 Information management

As indicated in the activities, the information required to understand what needs to be improved and by how much and when comes from many sources. It is important that to get a full and clear picture we gather and analyse all information. Some important examples are:

- The service catalogue
- SLRs
- Monitored and reported SLA targets
- Service knowledge management system (SKMS) and configuration management system (CMS)
- Process metrics
- Customer satisfactory surveys
- Complaints and compliments
- All data, information, knowledge produced by the process itself.

Much of the data and information will be initially gathered and held in technology-specific repositories but will need to be summarized and held as part of the SKMS for analysis and reporting purposes.

4.1.12 Critical success factors and key performance indicators

The following list includes some sample CSFs for the seven-step improvement process. Each organization should identify appropriate CSFs based on its objectives for the process. Each sample CSF is followed by a typical KPI that supports the CSF. These KPIs should not be adopted without careful consideration. Each organization should develop KPIs that are appropriate for its level of maturity, its CSFs and its particular circumstances. Achievement against KPIs should be monitored and used to identify opportunities for improvement, which should be logged in the CSI register for evaluation and possible implementation.

Note that because of the nature of the seven-step improvement process, it has to be applied to appropriate processes, activities, technology, organizational structure, people and partners for the benefits to be realized. This means that the KPIs used to judge the success of the seven-step improvement process are actually the KPIs from the other lifecycle stages and processes to which it has been applied. As a result the examples given here come from other areas.

- **CSF** All improvement opportunities identified
- **KPI** Percentage improvement in defects; for example, 3% reduction in failed changes; 10% reduction in security breaches
- **CSF** The cost of providing services is reduced
- **KPI** Percentage decrease in overall cost of service provision; for example, 2.5% reduction in the average cost of handling an incident; 5% reduction in the cost of processing a particular type of transaction
- **CSF** The required business outcomes from IT services are achieved

- **KPI** A 3% increase in customer satisfaction with the service desk; 2% increase in customer satisfaction with the warranty offered by the payroll service.

4.1.13 Challenges and risks

Challenges facing organizations when implementing CSI include getting the required resources to implement and run the process, and gathering the right level of data and having the tools to manipulate it. Another challenge is to get the willingness of the IT organization to approach CSI in a consistent and structured way. The challenge is to make that IT manager realize that there is another way, and get commitment from management to approach it in that better way. Another challenge is obtaining sufficient information from the business regarding improvement requirements and cost reductions. A further challenge is persuading suppliers to include improvement in their contractual agreements; this is especially relevant for outsourced services.

There are several risks that could prevent CSI from achieving the overall desired effect:

- No formalized approach to CSI and initiatives being taken on randomly in an *ad-hoc* manner
- Insufficient monitoring and analysis to identify the areas of greatest need
- Staff attitude such as 'We have always done it this way and it has always been good enough'
- Inability to make the business case for improvement and therefore no funding for improvement initiatives
- Lack of ownership or loss of ownership
- Too much focus on IT improvements without clear understanding of business needs and objectives.

5 Continual service improvement methods and techniques

5.1 Methods and techniques
5.2 Assessments
5.3 Benchmarking
5.4 Service measurement
5.5 Metrics
5.6 Return on investment
5.7 Service reporting
5.8 CSI and other service management processes
5.9 Summary

5.1 Methods and techniques

A wide variety of methods and techniques can be used in the continual service improvement (CSI) activities ranging from 'soft and vague' to 'factual and scientific', often providing either both or a mixture of qualitative and quantitative measurement results. To ensure consistency of execution and effective measurement, especially for the activities of gathering and processing data, the techniques and methods that are used should be clearly documented in advance and communicated to the staff who will be responsible for their execution. To increase the trustworthiness of the factual data delivered to these processes it may be required for these processes to be audited for compliance to the agreed and prescribed methods and techniques.

An effective choice of methods and techniques for the analysis, presentation and use of the measurement information is highly dependent on the particular circumstances in which these tasks are performed and can generally not be documented in advance. A goal-oriented attitude and professional expertise and education of the individuals are required.

5.1.1 Effort and cost

CSI improvement activities can require a considerable amount of effort and money for larger-scale improvement projects to minimal time and effort for some incremental improvements. If the effort is going to be costly then the organization, both IT and the business, has to ask whether it is worth it. So the business case including an analysis of the return on investment (ROI) will have to be made.

Let's first look at the costs of implementing and operating a measurement framework for IT service provision. Possible major cost topics are:

- **Labour cost** Salaries of the organization's staff who are involved in implementing the measurement framework or who spend effort on performing one of the activities in operating or maintaining the measurement framework, including costs associated with managing it. If (part of) IT is outsourced, the external provider costs should be included here too.
- **Tooling cost** Purchase, licences, installation and configuration, maintenance costs of hardware, software and other equipment specifically used for the measurement activities. Tools could be a cost on the provider, which they will pass on back to you.
- **Training cost** Cost of training and coaching staff in the use of measurement methods, techniques, tools and procedures.
- **Expertise cost** Payments to hired experts and consulting firms, typically for the planning, implementation and maintenance activities pertaining to the measurement framework. Also includes the out-of-pocket costs of acquiring information used in the measurement framework that is not in the possession of the organization itself such as benchmarking data.

When deciding whether the measurement framework is worth the effort, consider the amounts to spend on:

- **Implementation** Initial costs of the measurement framework, and if it changes. In practice these types of costs can be reliably estimated and controlled by using aproject-oriented approach.
- **Operation** The level of costs associated with the operation of the measurement framework is largely fixed as a result of the way it is designed and equipped.
- **Maintenance** The level of these types of cost depends mainly on the expected rate at which the measurement framework will require adaptation to changing circumstances and on the quality of its implementation.

5.1.2 Implementation review and evaluation

Implementation review and evaluation is key to determining the effectiveness of a CSI improvement programme. Some common questions for review include:

- Were we correct in our assessment of the current situation and in defining the problem statement?

- When defining the goals for improving IT services did we commit to the right goals?
- When developing our strategy for improving the use and management of IT services, did we make the right choices and take the right decisions?
- When implementing our strategy, did we do it right?
- In the new situation, have we improved the provision of IT services?
- And finally, what are the lessons learned and where are we now?

Review and evaluation of a CSI initiative fall within two broad categories:

- Issues closely tied to the original problem situation for IT service provision to the business and ensuing business aims and strategy for the improvement thereof
- Issues in relation to the planning, implementation and proceedings of the IT improvement programme itself and associated projects such as measurements,problems, actions and changes.

The issues in the first category are closely related to the characteristics of the original problem situation, following which staff instigated the actions for understanding and improvements. These actions will therefore include:

- The ability of IT services to meet business needs
- Business satisfaction with the service provision
- Business benefits in the area of productivity, effectiveness, efficiency and economy
- Financial issues such as understanding the costs of IT service provision, control of IT costs to the business, and accountability of IT costs to the business
- The quality of IT service provision and support of IT use
- Communication between the business and IT service provider and the degree of mutual understanding
- The degree of understanding and control of the management of the IT infrastructure and IT service provision on the part of the business.

For the second category the following issues should be reviewed and evaluated:

- Costs of staff involved in the improvement programme and costs of implementing and maintaining the measurement framework
- Project management such as planning, performance, timeliness of achieving results and milestones, amount of replanning
- Adequacy of methods and techniques used
- Problems, bottlenecks, causes of progress performance problems, improvements and changes
- Communication, information gathering, reporting.

5.2 Assessments

Assessments are the formal mechanisms for comparing the operational process environment to the performance standards for the purpose of measuring improved process capability and/or to identify potential shortcomings that could be addressed. The advantage of assessments is they provide an approach to sample particular elements of a process or the process organization which impact the efficiency and the effectiveness of the process.

Just by conducting a formal assessment an organization is demonstrating its significant level of commitment to improvement. Assessments involve real costs, staff time and management promotion. Organizations need to be more than just involved in an assessment; they need to be committed to improvement.

Comparison of the operational environment to industry norms is a relatively straightforward process. The metrics associated with industry norms are typically designed into the process control structure. Sampling and comparison then can be considered an operational exercise. Dealing with gaps apparent from such monitoring and reporting are addressed as an element of the check stage of the improvement lifecycle. An assessment based on comparison to a maturity model has been common over the last few years.

A well-designed maturity assessment framework evaluates the viability of all aspects of the process environment including the people, process and technology as well as factors affecting overall process effectiveness within the business – culture of acceptance, process strategy and vision, process organization, process governance, business/IT alignment, process reporting/metrics and decision-making. The balance of this section focuses on this form of assessment. However the principles of maturity assessment can easily be extended to assessments based on industry norms.

The initial step in the assessment process is to choose (or define) the maturity model and in turn the maturity attributes to be measured at each level. A suggested approach is to turn to the best-practice frameworks such as Capability Maturity Model Integration (CMMI), Control OBjectives for Information and related Technology (COBIT), ISO/IEC 20000 or the process maturity framework. These frameworks define maturity models directly or a model can be inferred. The frameworks are also useful in the definition of process maturity attributes.

5.2.1 When to assess

Assessments can be conducted at any time. A way to think about assessment timing is in line with the improvement lifecycle:

- **Plan (project initiation)** Assess the targeted processes to form the basis for a process improvement project. Processes can be of many configurations and design, which increases the complexity of assessment data collection.
- **Plan (project midstream)** A check during process implementation or improvement activities serves as validation that process project objectives are being met and, most importantly, provides tangible evidence that benefits are being achieved from the investment of time, talent and resources to process initiatives.
- **Do/check (process in place)** Upon the conclusion of a process project, it is important to validate the maturation of process and the process organization through the efforts of the project team. In addition to serving as a decisive conclusion for a project, scheduling periodic reassessments can support overall organizational integration and quality efforts.

5.2.2 What to assess and how

The assessment's scope is one of the key decisions. Scope should be based on the assessment's objective and the expected future use of service and process assessments and assessment reports.

Assessments can be targeted broadly at those processes currently implemented or focused specifically where known problems exist within the current process environment. There are three potential scope levels:

- **Process only** Assessment only of process attributes based on the general principles and guidelines of the process framework which defines the subject process.
- **People, process and technology** Extend the process assessment to include assessment of the organizational structure, skills, roles and talents of the managers and practitioners of the process as well as the ability of the process-enabling technology deployed to support the objectives and transaction state of the process.
- **Full assessment** Extend the people, process and technology assessment to include an assessment of the culture of acceptance within the organization, the ability of the organization to articulate a process strategy, the definition of a vision for the process environment as an 'end state', the structure and function of the process organization, the ability of process governance to assure that process objectives and goals are met, the business/IT alignment via a process framework, theeffectiveness of process reporting/metrics, and the capability and capacity of decision-making practices to improve processes over time.

All these factors are compared to the maturity attributes of the selected maturity model.

Table 5.1 Pros and cons of assessment approaches

Pro	Con
Using external resources for assessments	
Objectivity Expert ITIL knowledge Broad exposure to multiple IT organizations Analytical skills Credibility Minimal impact to operations	Cost Risk of acceptance Limited knowledge of existing environments Improper preparation affects effectiveness May not be there to see it through to the end – witness the results, good or not
Performing self-assessments	
No expensive consultants Self-assessments available for free Promotes internal cooperation and communication Good place to get started Internal knowledge of	Lack of objectivity (internal agendas) Little acceptance of findings Internal politics Limited knowledge or skills Resource intensive Inability to see the wood for the trees; assessment often needs a fresh set of

environment Can repeat exercise in future at minimal cost, using newly acquired skills	eyes Detracts from the day job; unless back-filled could inadvertently reduce service effectiveness and efficiencyduring assessment

Assessments can be conducted by the sponsoring organization or with the aid of a third party. The pros and cons of these differing approaches are listed in Table 5.1. The advantages of conducting a self-assessment is the reduced cost and the intellectual lift associated with learning how to objectively gauge the relative performanceand progress of an organization's processes. Of course the downside is the difficulty associated with remaining objective and impartial during the assessment.

The pitfall of a lack of objectivity can be eliminated by using a third party to conduct the assessment. There are a number of public 'mini-assessments' that are available on various websites, which provide a general perspective of maturity. However a more detailed assessment and resulting report can be contracted through a firm specializing in an assessment practice. Balancing against the obvious increased cost of a third-party assessment is the objectivity and experience of an organization that performs assessments regularly.

Whether conducted internally or externally, the assessment should be reported using the levels of the maturity model. A best-practice reporting method is to communicate assessment results in a graphical fashion. Graphs are an excellent tool as they can fulfil multiple communication objectives. For instance, graphs can reflect changes or trends of process maturity over time or reflect comparison of the current assessment to standards or norms.

5.2.3 Advantages and risks of assessments

The advantages include:

- They can provide an objective perspective of the current operational process state compared with a standard maturity model and a process framework. Through a thorough assessment, an accurate determination of any process gaps can be quickly completed, recommendations put forward and action steps planned.
- A well-planned and well-conducted assessment is a repeatable process. Thus the assessment is a useful management process in measuring progress over time and in establishing improvement targets or objectives.
- Using a common or universally accepted maturity framework, applied to a standard process framework, can serve to support comparing company process maturity to industry benchmarks.

The risks include:

- An assessment provides only a snapshot in time of the process environment. Therefore it may not reflect current business or cultural dynamics and process operational issues.
- If the decision is to outsource the assessment process, the assessment and maturity framework can be vendor or framework dependent. The proprietary nature of vendor-generated models may make it difficult to compare to industry standards.

- The assessment can become an end in itself rather than the means to an end. Rather than focusing on improving the efficiency and effectiveness of processes through process improvement, organizations can adopt a mindset of improving process for the sake of achieving maturity targets.
- Assessments are labour-intensive efforts. Resources are needed to conduct the assessments in addition to those responding such as process or tool practitioners, management and others. When preparing for an assessment, an honest estimate of time required from all parties is in order.
- Assessments attempt to be as objective as possible in terms of measurements and assessment factors, but ultimately assessment results are still subject to the opinion of assessors. Thus assessments themselves are subjective and the results can have a bias based on the attitudes, experience and approach of the assessors themselves.

Assessments are an effective method of answering the question 'Where are we now?' Understanding how an existing service is performing, or how effective and efficientservice management processes are, is important for identifying the gap between where we are and where we want to be. As we begin our discussion of assessments, we need to look at the relationship between business processes, IT services, IT systems and components that make up an IT system. IT service managementprocesses support the IT services, IT systems and components. CSI will need to review the results of each one of these areas for effectiveness and efficiency. This will help identify the areas for improvement. This relationship is shown in Figure 5.1.

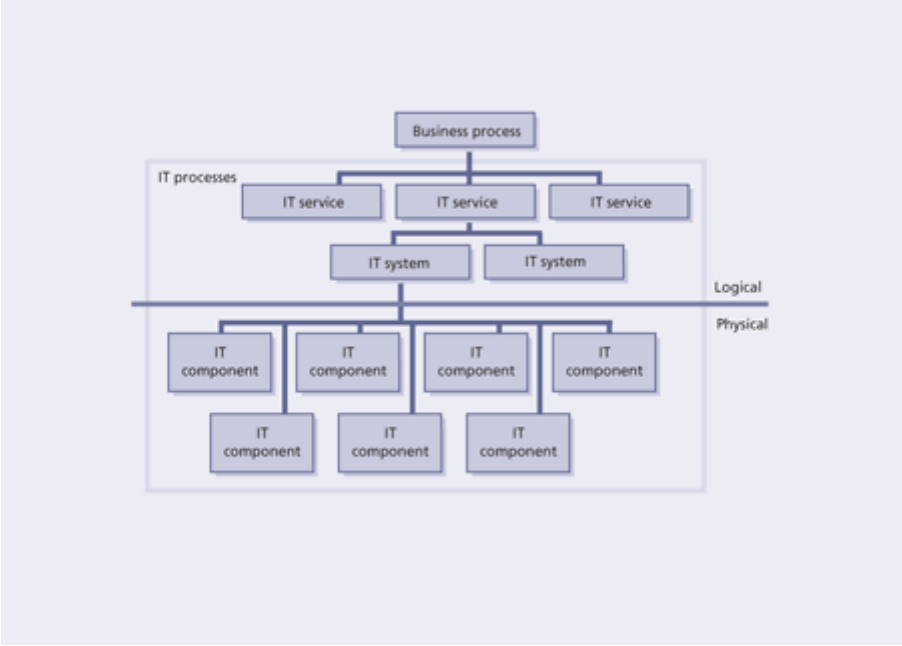


Figure 5.1 The relationship of services, processes and systems

In the CSI journey, the decisions on what to improve are critical to the overall results that can be achieved. Any discussion on improvements has to begin with the services being provided to the business. This could lead to improvements on the service itself or to process improvements supporting the business service.

Improvement activities require the investment of human, financial and technological resources in the quest for continual improvement. These resources are allocated from other uses (e.g. customer support initiatives, new product development) to the improvement work. The business rationalizes decisions to allocate resources on the basis of the greatest ROI or value on investment (VOI). An important consideration then becomes understanding and articulating improvement needs and the benefits of improvement.

The goal of service improvement for an organization is two-fold:

- First, the organization seeks to achieve service objectives in a cost-efficient manner. The objectives can (and should) be linked to the overall strategy of the business. The efficiency issue for an organization is determining that the process is achieving its objectives with the most cost-efficient use of resources. There is potential forcost savings through elimination of unnecessary, redundant, overlapping or manual process activities and procedures, which in turn can be a significant benefit driverfor justifying a process improvement.
- Second, the organization identifies those elements of process that detract from meeting service objectives effectively. Effectiveness relates to the ability of the process to achieve or exceed its principles and goals. In other words, a process would be considered effective if, through the implementation of the process, the organization meets, sustains and potentially exceeds the strategic goals and tactical objectives of the organization. Thus service improvements focus on addressing perceived or measurable process deficiencies, impacting specific organizational objectives, and can be quantified as delivered improvement benefits.

Service improvements are governed by the improvement lifecycle, which is modelled on the PDCA cycle of Plan, Do, Check, Act (see Figures 3.2 and 3.1 for the CSI approach and Chapter 4 for interfaces with the seven-step improvement process). The model establishes a clear pattern for continual improvement efforts:

- **Plan** Establishes goals for improvement including gap analysis, and defines action steps to close the gap and establish and implement measures to ensure that the gap has been closed and benefits achieved.
- **Do** Development and implementation of a project to close the gap. Implementation or improvement of processes and establishing the smooth operation of the process.
- **Check** Comparison of the implemented environment to the measures of success established in the Plan phase. The comparison determines if a gap still exists between the improvement objectives of the process and the operational process state. Gaps don't necessarily require closure. A gap may be considered tolerable if the actual performance is within allowable limits of performance.
- **Act** The decision process to determine if further work is required to close remaining gaps, and allocation of resources necessary to support another round of improvement. Project decisions at this stage are the input for the next round of the lifecycle, closing the loop as input in the Plan phase.

5.2.4 Value of processes versus maturity of processes

Figure 5.2 illustrates the value of a process in comparison to its maturity. For service management process improvement projects, one of the questions asked should be on how mature we

need our processes to be. The answer to this is tied directly back to the business. In other words how important is a process to the business.

Let us say that a particular organization has gone through an assessment and found that three key processes, service level management (SLM), availability managementand capacity management, shown in Figure 5.2, are not very mature. This particular organization is changing its strategy for selling and delivering products and services to a web-based strategy. Because of the importance of capacity management and availability management to any organization that provides products and services over the web, this company has to implement an improvement programme for increasing the maturity of both processes. Without any improvement initiatives this particularorganization is putting itself at risk. We have all read about companies that have experienced larger than planned for usage and how they often create catastrophic results for organizations. The lack of proper capacity planning has in many cases created availability issues that have shut down an organization's ability to sell its products.

Having a low SLM process maturity also will create some issues for CSI activities. How do we know the new business requirements? What is currently being monitored and how well are we doing against targets? Do we have roles identified for reporting and analysing data?

The maturity of a process should ideally fall in the 'safe' areas. If a process is immature but the business heavily depends on it there is a significant danger to the organization. If a process is very mature yet provides very little to the business, then an organization may be over-investing resources and money. When CSI is looking at improving processes in support of IT services, understanding the value of processes to a business is critical.

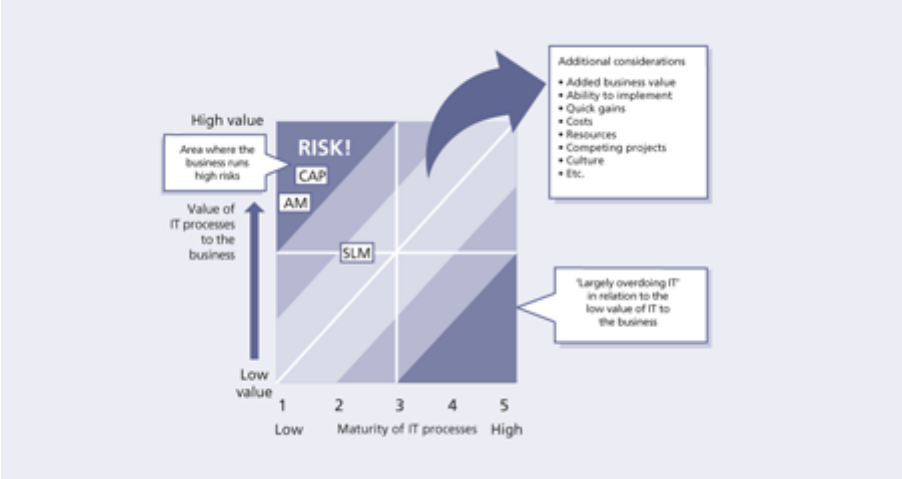


Figure 5.2 The value of a process versus the maturity of a process

5.2.5 Gap analysis

Gap analysis is a business assessment tool enabling an organization to compare where it is currently and where it wants to go in the future. This provides the organization with insight to areas that have room for improvement. This can be used to determine the gap between 'What do we want?' and 'What do we need?', for example.

The process involves determining, documenting and approving the variance between business requirements and current capabilities. Gap analysis naturally flows frombenchmarking or other assessments such as service or process maturity assessments. Once the general expectation of performance is understood, then it is possible to compare that expectation with the level of performance at which the company currently functions. This comparison becomes the gap analysis, which can be performed at the strategic, tactical or operational level of an organization.

Gap analysis can be conducted from different perspectives such as:

- The organization, including organizational structure and capabilities of the people
- Business direction
- Business processes
- Information technology.

Gap analysis provides a foundation for how much effort in time, money and human resources is required to achieve a particular goal (e.g. how to bring a service from amaturity level of 2 to 3).

5.3 Benchmarking

Benchmarking is a specific type of assessment and is a process used in management, particularly strategic management, in which organizations evaluate various aspects of their processes in relation to best practice, usually within their own sector. This then allows organizations to develop plans on how to adopt such best practice, usually with the aim of increasing some aspect of performance. Benchmarking may be a one-time occurrence, but it is often treated as a continuous process in which organizations continually seek to challenge their practices.

Organizations have a growing need to get a clear view on their level of quality and performance compared with that of their competitors and in the eye of their customers. It isn't sufficient any more to have internal self-assessment reports on the status of IT performance; it is equally important to test and compare it with the view the market has on the performance of the organization. A positive result of this test and comparison can give a competitive edge to the organization in the marketplace and generates trust with its customers. The results of benchmarking and self-assessments lead to identification of gaps in terms of people, process and technology.
A benchmark can be the catalyst to initiating prioritization of where to begin formal process improvement. The results of benchmarking must clearly display the gaps, identify the risks of not closing the gaps, and facilitate prioritization of development activities and communication of this information.

Benchmarking is actually a logical sequence of stages that an organization goes through to achieve continual improvement in its key processes. It involves cooperation with others as benchmarking partners learn from each other where improvements can be made. It will be necessary to:

- **Ensure senior management support**
- **Take an external view** Bring together business intelligence and internal performance to draw conclusions about the way internal resources and processes must be improved to achieve and surpass the performance of others.

- **Compare processes, not outputs** Comparisons with organizations in the same sector are unlikely to identify the significant improvements that have been made elsewhere or overturn the conventions of the sector.
- **Involve process owners** Their involvement encourages acceptance and buy-in by those who will be affected immediately by the changes which will be required to improve performance.
- **Set up benchmarking teams** As a benchmarking culture develops, people will apply the method as part of the normal way in which they manage their work.
- **Acquire the skills** People who undertake benchmarking require a small amount of training and guidance; an experienced in-house facilitator or external consultant will probably be required to provide technical assurance and encouragement in the application of the method.

Organizations should plan their benchmarking process based on their improvement needs, and should understand that this may require measurement of other companies. Some cross-industry figures may be published by the international research organizations, but will not necessarily include the assumptions and measurements a given organization needs. A research organization may, however, be a valuable benchmarking partner, for example, if target companies are competitors.

There is a general expectation that benchmarking is a process of comparing an organization's performance to industry-standard figures. By extension, having such benchmark figures available is often seen as the first hurdle in a benchmarking exercise. However, as this section will show, benchmarks are only relevant when the comparison is of the same performance measures or indicators, and is with organizations of similar size, industry and geography.

5.3.1 Benchmarking procedure

Identify your problem areas. Because benchmarking can be applied to any business process or function, a range of research techniques may be required, including:

- Informal conversations with customers, employees, or suppliers
- Focus groups
- In-depth marketing research
- Quantitative research
- Surveys
- Questionnaires
- Re-engineering analysis
- Process mapping
- Quality control variance reports
- Financial ratio analysis.

5.3.2 Benchmarking costs

Benchmarking is a moderately expensive process, but most organizations find that it more than pays for itself. The three main types of costs are:

- **Visit costs** This includes travel- and accommodation-related expenses for team members who need to travel to the site.

- **Time costs** Members of the benchmarking team will be investing time in researching problems, finding exceptional companies to study, visits and implementation. This will take them away from their regular tasks for part of each day so additional staff might be required.
- **Benchmarking database costs** Organizations that institutionalize benchmarking into their daily procedures find it is useful to create and maintain a database of best practices and the companies associated with each best practice.

5.3.3 Value of benchmarking

Benchmarking is often used as a driver to make changes when the organization is reluctant to change the way of working. This is discussed in section 5.3.4.

To summarize, a benchmark is the basis for:

- Profiling quality in the market
- Boosting self-confidence and pride in employees as well as motivating and tying employees to an organization; this is relevant with today's staff shortages in the IT industry – IT personnel want to work in a highly efficient, cutting-edge environment
- Trust from customers that the organization is a good IT service management provider.

Optimizing service quality is key to all IT organizations to maximize performance and customer satisfaction and provide value for money. Organizations will be required to focus on end results and service quality, rather than simply on their business activities and processes.

5.3.4 Benchmarking as a lever

Consider the following 'paradigm blindness': 'The way we do it is the best because this is the way we've always done it.'

Benchmarking is sometimes the only way to open an organization to new methods, ideas and tools to improve their effectiveness. It helps break through resistance to change by demonstrating other methods of solving problems than the one currently employed, and demonstrating that they are irrefutably better, because they are being used successfully by others.

5.3.5 Benchmarking as a steering instrument

Benchmarking is a management technique to improve performance. It is used to compare performance between different organizations – or different units within a single organization – undertaking similar processes. Benchmarking is an ongoing method of measuring and improving products, services and practices against the best that can be identified in any industry anywhere. It has been defined as 'the search for industry best practices which lead to superior performance'.

5.3.6 Benchmarking categories

Benchmarking is a tool to identify improvement opportunities as well as to verify the outcome of improvement activities. Organizations can conduct internal or externalbenchmark studies. Improving service management can be as simple as asking: 'Are we better today than we were yesterday?', and looking at incremental improvements.

Here are some benchmarking categories:

- Internal benchmarks – where an organization sets a baseline at a certain point in time for the same system or department and measures how it is doing today compared with the baseline originally set; this type of benchmark is often overlooked by organizations (service targets are a form of benchmark)
- Comparison with industry norms provided by external organizations
- Direct comparisons with similar organizations
- Comparison with other systems or departments within the same company.

5.3.7 Benefits

Benchmarking often reveals quick wins – opportunities for improvement that are relatively easy and inexpensive to implement while providing substantial benefits in process effectiveness, cost reduction or staff synergy. The costs are clearly repaid through the improvements realized when organizations use benchmarking successfully. Using benchmark results will help deliver major benefits in achieving:

- Economy in the form of lower prices and higher productivity on the part of the service provider
- Efficiency by comparing the costs of providing IT services and the contribution these services make to the business with what is achieved in other organizations, helping the organization to identify areas for improvement
- Effectiveness of business objectives realized compared with what was planned.

Benchmarking helps the organization to focus on strategic planning by identifying the relative effectiveness of IT support for the business. The economy is the easiest area to investigate although efficiency and effectiveness may deliver the most benefit to the business. To obtain the maximum benefit, it is necessary to look at all of these three areas, rather than focusing on one to the exclusion of the others.

5.3.8 Who is involved?

Within an organization there will be three parties involved in benchmarking:

- **The customer** The business manager responsible for acquiring IT services to meet business objectives. The customer might demonstrate an interest in benchmarking by asking: 'How can I improve my performance in procuring services and managing service providers, and in supporting the business through IT services?'
- **The user or consumer** Anyone who uses IT services to support his or her work. The user might demonstrate an interest in benchmarking by asking: 'How can I improve my performance by exploiting IT?'
- **The internal service provider** Providing IT services to users under service level agreements (SLAs) negotiated with and managed by the customer. The provider might demonstrate an interest in benchmarking by asking: 'How can we improve our performance in the delivery of IT services which meet the requirements of our customers and which are cost-effective and timely?'

There will also be participation from external parties:

- **External service providers** Providing IT services to users under contracts and SLAs negotiated with and managed by the customer
- **Members of the public** Ordinary people are increasingly becoming direct users of IT services
- **Benchmarking partners** Other organizations with whom comparisons are made in order to identify the best practices to be adopted for improvements.

5.3.9 What to benchmark?

Differences in benchmarks between organizations are normal. All organizations and service-provider infrastructures are unique, and most are continually changing. There are also intangible but influential factors that cannot easily and objectively be measured, such as goodwill, image and culture.

Direct comparison with similar organizations is most effective if there is a sufficiently large group of organizations with similar characteristics. It is important to understand the size and nature of the business area, including the geographical distribution and the extent to which the service is used for business or time-critical activities.

Comparison with other groups in the same organization normally allows a detailed examination of the features being compared, in order to establish whether or not the comparison is of like with like.

Hints and tips

When benchmarking one or more services or service management processes, the IT organization has to ascertain which of these the organization should focus on first, if all cannot be implemented simultaneously. Determine which services and supporting processes to compare. Benchmarking of a service management processis used to find out if a process is cost-effective, responsive to the customer's needs and effective in comparison with other organizations. Some organizations use benchmarking to decide whether they should change their service provider.

It is essential in planning for service management to start with an assessment or review of the relevant service management processes. The results of this can provide abaseline for future comparison.

Example of a poor management decision

One large company started with the implementation of all service management processes. Senior management never explained why all these processes should be implemented. It sounded like a good thing to do: 'Everybody else is doing service management so why don't we?' After two years the whole project had to be stopped because customers were complaining about poor service. It was decided to restart the service management project. This time senior management decided to implement only a part of service management (the processes where the pain was most felt) and conducted an assessment to provide a baseline of results for future comparison.

Benchmarking techniques can be applied at various levels from relatively straightforward in-house comparisons through to an industry-wide search for best practice.Benchmarking comprises four basic stages: planning, analysis, action and review, or one can apply the seven-step improvement process to benchmarking:

1. Identify the strategy for improvement.
2. Define what you will measure.

- Select the broad service or service management process or function to benchmark (such as service desk) in relation to stakeholder needs.
- Draw up a preliminary list of potential benchmarking partners (these may be within the organization or outside).
- Identify possible sources of information and methods of collection to confirm the suitability of potential partners.
- Within that process, define the activities to be benchmarked (such as incident lifecycle).
- Identify the resources required for the study.
- Confirm the key performance measures or indicators to measure the performance in carrying out the activity.
- Document the way the activities are currently completed.
- Agree the plan and its implementation.

3. Gather the data.
   - Collect information to identify the most likely potential benchmarking partner to contact.
4. Process the data.
5. Analyse the information and data.
   - Confirm the best potential benchmarking partner and make a preliminary assessment of the performance gap.
   - Establish contacts and visits, if appropriate, to validate and substantiate the information.
   - Compare the existing process with that of the benchmarking partner to identify differences and innovations.
   - Agree targets for improvement that are expected as a result of adopting the benchmarking partner's ways of doing things.
6. Present and use the information.
   - Communicate the results of the study throughout the relevant parts of the organization and to the benchmarking partner.
   - Plan how to achieve the improvements.
7. Implement improvement.
   - Review performance when the changes have been embedded in the organization.
   - Identify and rectify anything which may have caused the organization to fall short of its target.
   - Communicate the results of the changes implemented to the organization and the benchmarking partner.
   - Consider benchmarking again to continue the improvement process.

Ideally, benchmark reviews should be built into an ongoing service management lifecycle so that regularly scheduled reviews or benchmarks are conducted. The formality and rigour with which they are conducted will vary depending on the environment, rate of business change, complexity of the environment and elapsed time since the lastreview. Conducting these reviews regularly provides valuable metrics and trend analysis with which to judge improvements (or lack thereof) and take corrective action as early as possible to maximize performance gains.

5.3.10 Comparison with industry norms

ITIL is itself an industry-recognized best practice, increasingly providing a framework for service management worldwide. The ITIL core publications provide documented guidance on detailed process assessment and service benchmarking that can be used as checklists and templates for organizations doing their own service reviews and benchmarks. Additionally, many IT service organizations around the world provide consulting and professional expertise in the process of conducting service management benchmarks and assessments to compare the current processes with published best practices and the ITIL recommendations. It may be worthwhile to investigate using these services if the scope of an assessment is very large or complex.

In addition, organizations may wish to compare their own processes against international standards, especially ISO/IEC 20000, ISO/IEC 27001 and ISO/IEC 19770.

5.3.10.1 Process maturity comparison

Conducting a process maturity assessment is one way to identify service management improvement opportunities. Often when organizations conduct a maturity assessment they want to know how they compare to the other organizations. Table 5.2 reflects average maturity scores for over 100 separate organizations that went through a maturity assessment using the scoring system detailed in Table 5.3.

Table 5.2 Average results of over 100 process assessments before improvement

Financial management	2.67
Incident management/service desk	2.49
IT service continuity management (ITSCM)	2.42
Change management	2.36
Release management	2.26
Capacity management	2.02
Availability management	1.97
SLM	1.96
Problem management	1.83
Service asset and configuration management	1.66

Table 5.3 CMMI maturity model

0. Non-existent	Nothing present
1. Initial	Concrete evidence of development

2. Repeatable	Some process documentation but some errors likely
3. Defined	Standardized and documented
4. Managed	Monitored for compliance
5. Optimized	Processes are considered best practices through improvement

As you can, see SLM, which is a key process in support of CSI, is at a fairly low maturity level in the organizations used in the above example. The lack of a mature SLM process that provides for identification of new business requirements, monitoring and reporting of results can make it difficult to identify service improvement opportunities. A prime target for improvements in this example would be first to mature the SLM practice to help achieve measurable targets to improve services going forward.

5.3.10.2 Total cost of ownership

The total cost of ownership (TCO), developed by Gartner, has become a key measurement of the effectiveness and the efficiency of services. TCO is defined as all the costs involved in the design, introduction, operation and improvement of services within an organization from its inception until retirement. Often, TCO is measured relating to hardware components. The TCO of an IT service is even more meaningful. CSI needs to take the TCO into perspective when looking at service improvement plans (SIPs).

TCO is often used to benchmark specific services in IT against other organizations – managed service providers.

5.3.11 Benchmark approach

Benchmarking will establish the extent of an organization's existing maturity with best practice and help in understanding how that organization compares with industry norms. Deciding what the key performance indicators (KPIs) are going to be and then measuring against them will give solid management information for future improvement and targets.

A benchmark could be either:

- **An internal conducted benchmark** Completed internally using resources from within the organization to assess the maturity of the service management processes against a reference framework
- **An external conducted benchmark** Completed by an external third-party company; most have their own proprietary models for the assessment of service management process maturity.

The results and recommendations contained within the benchmarking review can then be used to identify and rectify areas of weakness within the IT service management processes.

Viewed from a business perspective, benchmark measurements can help the organization to assess IT services, performance and spend against peer or competitor organizations and best practice, both across the whole of IT and by appropriate business areas, answering questions such as:

- How does IT spend compare to other similar organizations – overall, as a percentage of revenue, or per employee?
- How does IT spend compare for similar functions, e.g. payroll functions either within an organization or with other organizations?
- How does IT spend compare across business units or business processes?
- How does IT spend compare across locations or technologies?
- How effective is IT service delivery (and identify opportunities and measures for improvement)?
- How efficient is IT service delivery (and identify opportunities and measures for improvement)?
- Which is the most appropriate sourcing option?
- Is the value of a long-term sourcing contract being maintained year on year?

Benchmarking activities need to be business-aligned. They can be expensive exercises whether undertaken internally or externally, and therefore they need to be focused on where they can deliver most value. For internal service providers, cost benchmarking can assess the efficiency and effectiveness of the IT organization. For external service providers, especially outsourced services, they can help to ensure the right IT services for the right price. Results of benchmarking not only provide a statement ofperformance, but can also be used to identify, recommend and plan improvements. They can also demonstrate value to the business and set targets for improvement levels, with subsequent benchmarking to assess achievement.

Comparisons of service performance and workload characteristics between peer organizations, the effectiveness of business process and the IT contribution to IT are also of value as part of a TCO assessment. Third-party specialists are available to conduct benchmarking and assessments, giving the business an external perspective and helping to lend credibility to the results and recommendations for improvements.

There is a variety of IT benchmarking types available separately or in combination, including:

- Cost and performance for internal service providers
- Price and performance for external service providers
- Process performance against industry best practice
- Financial performance of high-level IT costs against industry or peers
- Effectiveness considering satisfaction ratings and business alignment at all levels.

The context for benchmarking requires information about the organization's profile, complexity and relative comparators. An effective and meaningful profile contains four key components:

- **Company information profile** The company profile defines the landscape of an organization – basic information on the company size, industry type, geographic location and types of user are typical of data gathered to establish this profile.
- **Current assets** The IT assets mix within the organization may include production IT, desktop and mobile clients, peripherals, network and server assets.
- **Current best practices** These include policies, procedures and/or tools that improve returns, and their maturity and degree of usage.

- **Complexity** This includes information about the end-user community, the types and quantities of varied technologies in use and how IT is managed.

5.4 Service measurement

For all sizes of businesses, private and public organizations, educational institutions, consumers and the individuals working within these organizations, IT services have become an integral means for conducting business. Without IT services many organizations would not be able to deliver the products and services in today's market. As reliance on these IT services increases so do the expectations for availability, reliability and stability. This is why having the business and IT integrated is so important. No longer can they be thought of separately. The same holds true when measuring IT services. It is no longer sufficient to measure and report against the performance of an individual component such as a server or application. IT must now be able to measure and report against an end-to-end service.

The seven-step improvement process described in Chapter 4 discussed the need to define what you will measure after looking at the requirements and the ability to measure.

For services there are three basic measurements that most organizations utilize, which *ITIL Service Design* covers in more detail. They are:

- Availability of the service
- Reliability of the service
- Performance of the service.

In many cases, when an organization is monitoring, measuring and reporting on component levels it is doing so to protect itself and possibly to point the blame elsewhere – 'My server or my application was up 100% of the time.' Service measurement is not about placing blame or protecting oneself but instead provides a meaningful view of the IT service as the customer experiences it. The server may be up, but because the network is down, the customer is not able to connect to the server. Therefore the IT service was not available even though one or more of the components used to provide the service was available the whole time. Being able to measure against a service is directly linked to the components, systems and applications that are being monitored and reported on.

Measuring at the component level is necessary and valuable, but service measurement must go further than the component level. Service measurement will require someone to take the individual measurements and combine them to provide a view of the true customer experience. Too often we provide a report against a component, system or application but don't provide the true service level as experienced by the customer. Figure 5.3 shows how it is possible to measure and report against different levels of systems and components to provide a true service measurement. Even though the figure references availability measuring and reporting, the same can apply forperformance measuring and reporting.

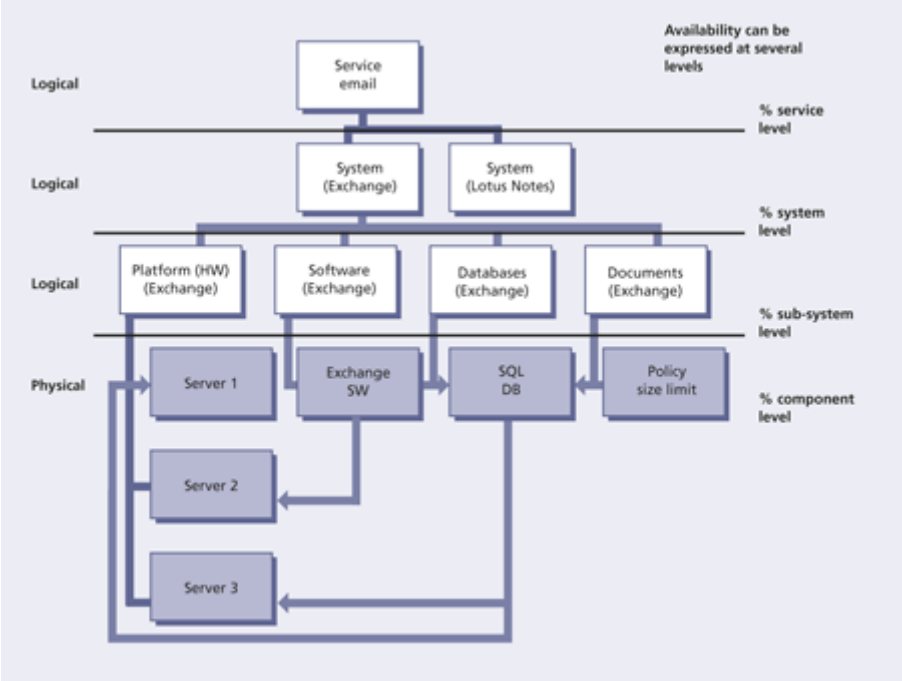


Figure 5.3 Availability reporting

5.4.1 Design and develop a service measurement framework

A challenge many organizations face is the creation of a service measurement framework that leads to value-added reporting.

One of the activities documented in *ITIL Service Design* is the design of the measurement methods and metrics for the services, the architectures, their constituentcomponents and the processes. These measurements are documented in the service design package and handed over to the service transition stage for the testing andvalidation of the measurement framework and methods during early life support.

Setting up a framework is as much an art as a science. It may prove difficult at first but the results over time are worth the effort. An organization may go through some trial and error in the beginning so it should not be afraid to admit mistakes on particular measures or targets and make adjustments to the framework.

Keep in mind that service measurement is not an end in itself. The end result should be to improve services and improve accountability.

One of the first steps in developing a service measurement framework is to understand the business processes and identify those that are most critical to the delivery of value to the business. The IT goals and objectives must support the business goals and objectives. There also needs to be a strong link between the operational, tacticaland strategic level goals and objectives, otherwise an organization will find itself measuring and reporting on performance that may not add any value.

Service measurement is looking at not only the past but also the future – what do we need to be able to do and how can we do things better? The output of any service measurement framework should allow individuals to make operational, tactical or strategic decisions.

Selecting a combination of measures is important to provide an accurate and balanced perspective. The measurement framework as a whole should be balanced and unbiased, and able to withstand change – the measures are still applicable (or available) after a change has been made.

Whether measuring one or multiple services, the following steps are key to a successful service measurement framework:

- Origins:
- Defining what success looks like. What are we trying to achieve and how will we know when we've achieved it?
- Building the framework and choosing measures:
- Ask what we need to measure that will provide us with useful information that allows us to make strategic, tactical and/or operational decisions
- Ask what measures will provide us with the data and information we need
- Set targets for all measures by SLAs or service level targets/objectives that have been agreed internally within IT
- Critical elements of a service measurement framework. These should be:
- Integrated into business planning
- Focused on business and IT goals and objectives
- Cost-effective
- Balanced in their approach on what is measured
- Able to withstand change
- Performance measures. These should:
- Be timely
- Be accurate and reliable
- Be well-defined, specific and clear
- Be relevant to meeting the objectives
- Not create a negative behaviour
- Lead to improvement opportunities
- Defined roles and responsibilities:
- Who defines the measures and targets?
- Who monitors and measures?
- Who gathers the data?
- Who processes and analyses the data?
- Who prepares the reports?
- Who presents the reports?

5.4.2 Different levels of measurement and reporting

Creating a service measurement framework will require the ability to build upon different metrics and measurements. The end result is a view of the way individualcomponent measurements feed the end-to-end service measurement which should support KPIs defined for the service. This will then be the

basis for creating a service scorecard and dashboard. The service scorecard will then be used to populate an overall balanced scorecard or IT scorecard. Figure 5.4 shows there are multiple levels that need to be considered when developing a service measurement framework.

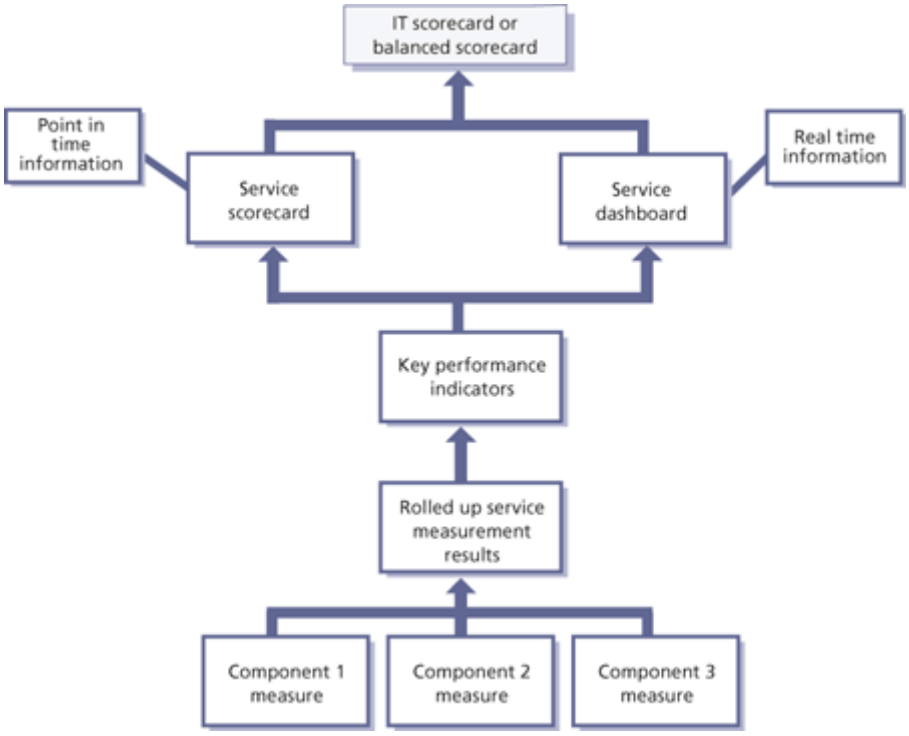


Figure 5.4 Service measurement model

What gets reported at each level is dependent on the measures that are selected.

Starting at the bottom, the technology domain areas will be monitoring and reporting on a component basis. This is valuable as each domain area is responsible for ensuring the servers are operating within defined guidelines and objectives. At this level, measurements will be on component availability, reliability and performance. The output of these measurements will feed into the overall end-to-end service measurement as well as the capacity and availability plans. These measurements will also feed into any incremental operations improvements and into a more formal CSI initiative.

A part of service measurement is then taking the individual component measurements and using them to determine the true service measurement for an end-to-end service derived from availability, reliability and performance measurements.

As an example let us use messaging as a service that is provided. Figure 5.5 shows we have four technology domains that often are monitored and reported on:

- Mainframe availability 99.96%
- WAN availability 98%
- LAN availability 97.5%

- Desktop availability 96%.

The availability numbers are examples provided only for illustrative purposes.

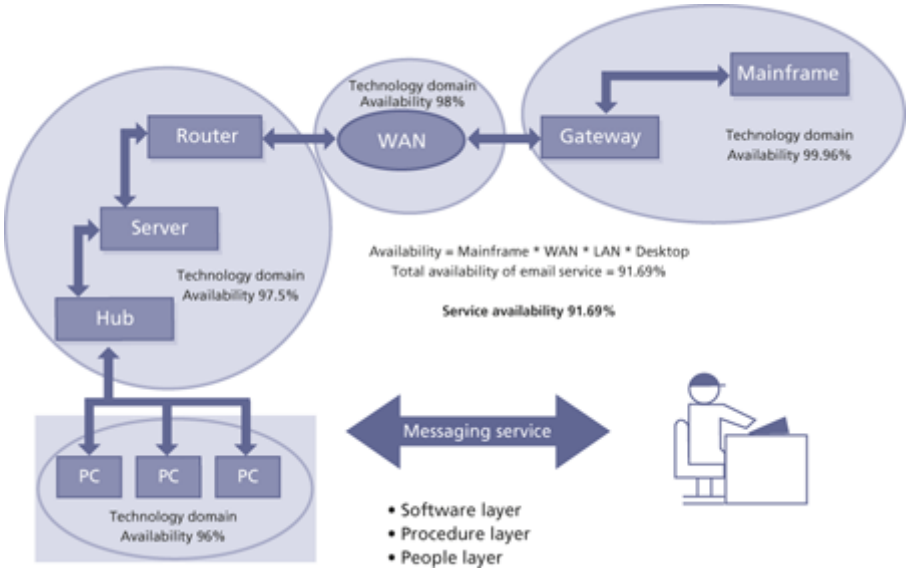


Figure 5.5 Technology domain versus service management

Note the end-to-end service availability in this example is not 96% because it is the lowest availability number. Since all the failures that led to decreased availability did not occur at the same time within each technology domain the availability numbers have to be multiplied together. So the calculation is 99.96% × 98% × 97.5% × 96%. This provides a minimum availability the customer can expect of the email service at 91.69% assuming all components break at different times; 91.69% would therefore be the target that could be agreed although it may end up being higher.

When developing a service management framework it is important to understand which are the most suitable types of report to create, who they are being prepared for, and how they will be used.

5.4.3 Service management process measurement

The same principles apply when measuring the efficiency and effectiveness of a service management process. As Figure 5.6 shows, you will need to define what to measure at the process activity level. These activity measures should support the process KPIs. The KPIs need to support higher-level goals. In Figure 5.6, the higher-level goal for change management is to improve the service quality. One of the major reasons for service quality issues is the downtime caused by failed changes. And one of the major reasons for failed changes is often the number of urgent changes an organization implements with no formal process. Therefore it would be advisable to capture the following key activity metrics:

- The number of urgent changes
- The number of failed urgent changes
- Unauthorized changes that failed.

There are four major levels to report on. The bottom level contains the activity metrics for a process and these are often volume type metrics such as number of requests for change (RFCs) submitted, number of RFCs accepted into the process, number of RFCs by type, number approved, number successfully implemented etc. The next level contains the KPIs associated with each process. The activity metrics should feed into and support the KPIs. The KPIs will support the next level, which is the high-level goal such as improving service quality, reducing IT costs or improving customer satisfaction. Finally, this high-level goal will feed into the organization's balanced scorecard or IT scorecard. When first starting out, be careful to not pick too many KPIs to support the high-level goal(s). Additional KPIs can always be added at a later time.

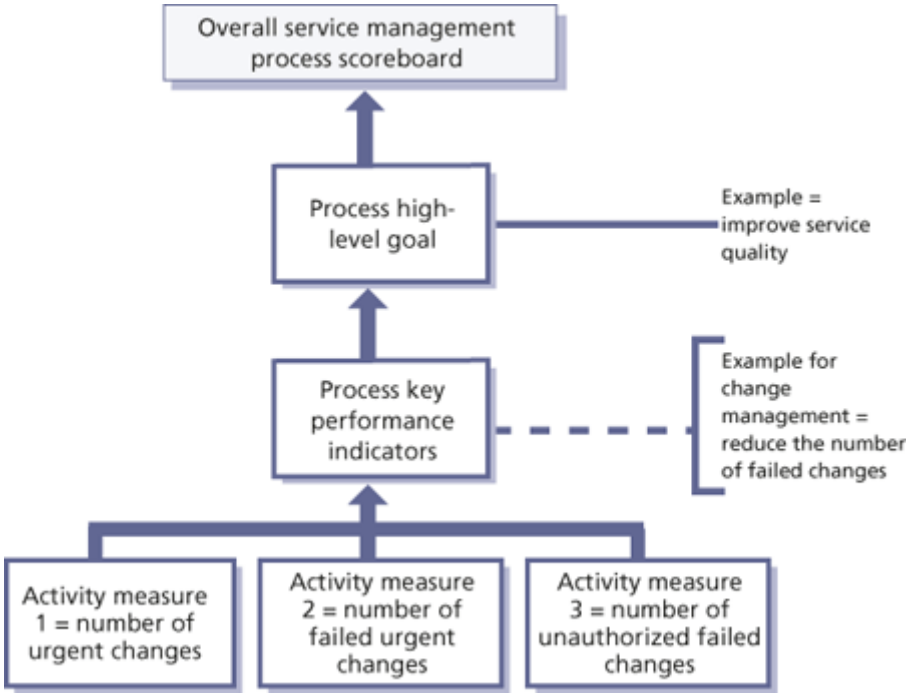


Figure 5.6 Service management model

Table 5.4 identifies some KPIs that reflect the value of service management. The KPIs are also linked to the service management process or processes that directly support the KPI. This table is not inclusive of all KPIs but simply an example of how KPIs may be mapped to processes.

Table 5.4 Key performance indicators of the value of service management processes

KPI	Service management process	Comment
Improved availability (by service/systems/applications)	Availability management Capacity management	Improved monitoring and reporting on service availability Expanded incident lifecycle, removing errors from the infrastructure, and reduction of failed changes;

	Incident management Problem management Change management Service level management	improved understanding of business requirements and IT capability – proactive planning.
Reduction of service levelbreaches (by service/systems/applications)	Availability management Capacity management Incident management Problem management Change management Service level management	Improved monitoring of services Priority model, incident ownership, monitoring and tracking; removal of errors from the infrastructure Reduction of failed changes; explicit SLAs
Reduction of mean time to repair(MTTR) (this should be measured by priority level, and not on a cumulative basis)	Incident management Event management Problem management Availability management Change management	Improved escalations, improved knowledge, improved prioritization Priority model and operational level agreements (OLAs)
Reduce percentage of urgent and emergency changes (bybusiness unit)	Change management Service level management	Creating lead time policies Improved planning and scheduling reduces the need for urgent and emergency changes Communicating change lead times to the business
Reduction of major incidents	Problem management Incident management Change	Removing errors from the infrastructure, and reduction of failed changes; improved understanding of business requirements and IT capability – proactive planning

management
Service level management
Capacity management
Availability management
Access management

5.4.4 Creating a measurement framework grid

It is recommended to create a framework grid that will set out the high-level goals and define which KPIs will support the goal and also which category the KPI addresses (see Table 5.5).

Table 5.5 High-level goals and key performance indicators

High-level goal	KPI	KPI category	Measurement	Target	How and who
Manage availability andr eliability of a service	Percentage improvement in overall end-to-end availability of services	Value Quality	End-to-end service availability based on the componentavailability that makes up the service AS 400 availability Network availability Application availability	99.995%	Technical managers Technical analyst Service level manager

KPI categories can be classified as:

- **Compliance** Are we doing it?
- **Quality** How well are we doing it?
- **Performance** How fast or slow are we doing it?
- **Value** Is what we are doing making a difference?

5.5 Metrics

It is important to remember that there are three types of metrics that an organization will need to collect to support CSI activities as well as other process activities:

- **Technology metrics** These metrics are often associated with component and application-based metrics such as performance, availability etc.
- **Process metrics** These metrics are captured in the form of critical success factors (CSFs), KPIs and activity metrics for the service management processes. They can help determine the overall health of a process. KPIs can help answer four key questions on quality, performance, value and compliance of following the process. CSI would use these metrics as input in identifying improvement opportunities for each process.
- **Service metrics** These metrics are a measure of the end-to-end service performance. Individual technology and process metrics are used when calculating the end-to-end service metrics.

In general, a metric is a scale of measurement defined in terms of a standard, i.e. a well-defined unit. Metrics are a system of parameters or ways of quantitativeassessment of a process that is to be measured. Metrics define what is to be measured. Metrics are usually specialized by the subject area, in which case they are valid only within a certain domain and cannot be directly benchmarked or interpreted outside it. Generic metrics, however, can be aggregated across subject areas or business units of an enterprise. Figure 5.7 shows the full hierarchy from measurement through to the business vision.

Metrics are used in several business models including CMMI, COBIT and Six Sigma. These measurements or metrics can be used to track trends, productivity, resources and much more. Typically, the metrics tracked are KPIs.

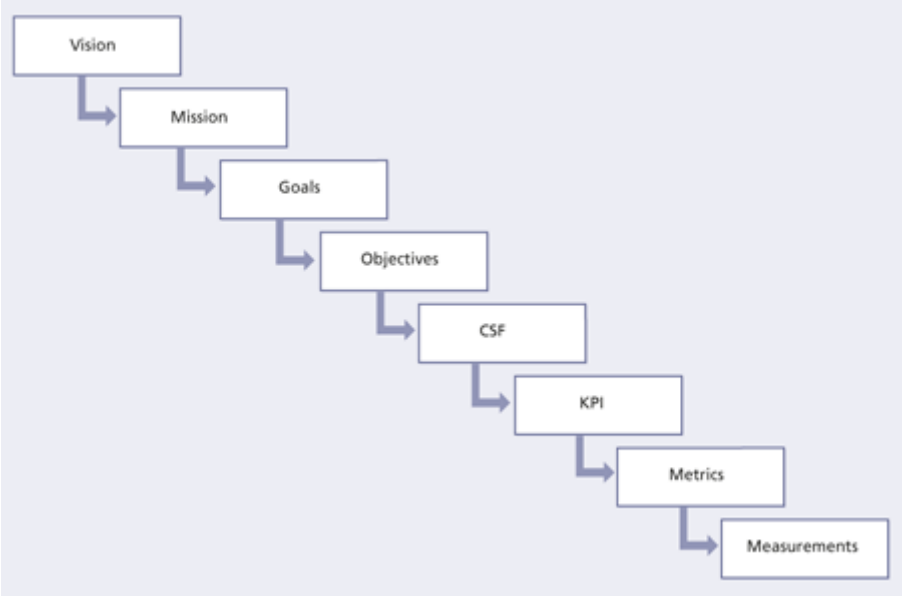


Figure 5.7 From vision to measurement

5.5.1 How many CSFs and KPIs?

Section 4.1.12 details CSFs and KPIs of the seven-step improvement process. It is recommended that no more than two to five KPIs are defined per CSF at any given time and that a service or process has no more that two to five CSFs associated with it at any given time.

It is recommended that in the early stages of a CSI initiative only two to three KPIs for each CSF are defined, monitored and reported on. As the maturity of a service andservice management processes increase, additional KPIs can be added. Based on what is important to the business and IT management, the KPIs may change over a period of time. Also keep in mind that as service management processes are implemented, this will often change the KPIs of other processes. As an example, increasing first-contact resolution is a common KPI for incident management. This is a good KPI to begin with, but when you implement problem management this should change. One of problem management's objectives is to reduce the number of recurring incidents. When these types of recurring incidents are reduced it will reduce the number of first-contact resolutions. In this case a reduction in first-contact resolution is a positive trend.

The next step is to identify the metrics and measurements required to compute the KPI. There are two basic kinds of KPI, qualitative and quantitative.

5.5.1.1 Qualitative KPIs

Here is a qualitative example:

- CSF: Improving IT service quality
- KPI: 10% increase in customer satisfaction rating for handling incidents over the next six months.

Metrics required:

- Original customer satisfaction score for handling incidents
- Ending customer satisfaction score for handling incidents.

Measurements:

- Incident-handling survey score
- Number of survey scores.

5.5.1.2 Quantitative KPIs

Here is a quantitative example:

- CSF: Reducing IT costs
- KPI: 10% reduction in the costs of handling printer incidents.

Metrics required:

- Original cost of handling printer incidents
- Final cost of handling printer incidents
- Cost of the improvement effort.

Measurements:

- Time spent on the incident by first-level operative and their average salary
- Time spent on the incident by second-level operative and their average salary
- Time spent on problem management activities by second-level operative and their average salary
- Time spent on the training first-level operative on the workaround
- Cost of a service call to third-party vendor
- Time and material from third-party vendor.

5.5.1.3 Is the KPI fit for use?

An important aspect to consider is whether a KPI is fit for use. Key questions are:

- What does the performance indicator really tell us about goal achievement? If we fail to meet the target set for a performance indicator, does that mean we fail to achieve some of our goals? And if we succeed in meeting certain targets, does this mean we will achieve our goals?
- How easy is it to interpret the performance indicator? Does it help us to decide on a course of action?
- When do we need the information? How often? How rapidly should the information be available?
- To what extent is the performance indicator stable and accurate? Is it sensitive to external, uncontrollable influences? What amount of effort is needed for a change in result that is not marginal?
- How easy is it to change the performance indicator itself? How easy is it to adapt the measurement system to changing circumstances or changes in our goals for IT service provision?
- To what extent can the performance indicator be measured now? Under which conditions can measurement continue? Which conditions impede measurement? Which conditions render the result meaningless?
- Who owns this KPI? Who is responsible for collecting and analysing the data? Who is accountable for improvements based on the information?

5.5.2 Tension metrics

The effort from any support team is a balancing act of three elements:

- Resources – people and money
- Functionality – the product or service and its quality
- The schedule.

The delivered product or service therefore represents a balanced trade-off between these three elements. Tension metrics can help create that balance by preventing teams from focusing on just one element – for example, on delivering the product or service on time. If an initiative is being driven primarily towards satisfying a businessdriver of on-time delivery to the exclusion of other factors, the manager will achieve this aim by flexing the resources and service features in order to meet the delivery schedule. This unbalanced focus will therefore either lead to budget increases or lower product quality. Tension metrics help create a delicate balance between shared goals and delivering a product or service according to business requirements within time and budget. Tension metrics do not, however, conflict with shared goals and values, but rather prevent teams from taking shortcuts and shirking on their

assignment. Tension metrics can therefore be seen as a tool to create shared responsibilities between team members with different roles in the service lifecycle.

Example of tension metrics

An organization may focus on increasing the number of incidents handled by each member of the service desk but fail to examine the impact on the resolution rate. If the resolution rate reduces because staff are rushing to deal with more incidents, the overall service quality has been damaged. In this case 'the number of incidents handled per service desk analyst' and 'the incident resolution rate' are the tension metrics that need to be examined together to see the true impact.

5.5.3 Goals and metrics

Each stage of the service lifecycle requires very specific contributions from the key roles identified in service design, service transition and service operation, each of which has very specific goals to meet. Ultimately, the quality of the service will be determined by how well each role meets its goals, and by how well those sometimes conflicting goals are managed along the way. That makes it crucial that organizations find some way of measuring performance – by applying a set of metrics to each goal.

5.5.3.1 Breaking down goals and metrics

It is outside the scope of this publication to dig too deeply into human resources management, and there is no shortage of literature already available on the subject. However, there are some resource specific items that can be said about best practices for goals and metrics as they apply to managing services in their lifecycle.

Many IT service organizations measure their IT staff in an abstract and high-level manner. During appraisal and counselling, most managers discuss such things as 'taking part in one or more projects/performing activities of a certain kind', or 'fulfilling certain roles in projects/activities' and 'following certain courses'. Although accomplishing such goals might be important for the professional growth of an individual, it does not facilitate the service lifecycle or any specific process in it. In reality, most IT service organizations do not use more detailed performance measures that are in line with key business drivers, because it is difficult to do, and do correctly.

But there is a way. In the design phase of a service, key business drivers were translated into service level requirements (SLRs) and operations level requirements, the latter consisting of process, skills and technology requirements. This constitutes a translation from a business requirement into requirements for IT services and ITcomponents. There is also the question of the strategic position of IT. In essence, the question is whether IT is viewed as an enabler or a cost centre, the answer to which determines the requirements for IT services and IT components. If IT is viewed as a cost centre, services might be developed to be used centrally in order to reduce TCO. Services will have those characteristics that will reduce total costs of ownership throughout the lifecycle. On the other hand, if IT is an enabler (which it has to be), services will be designed with the ability to adjust to changing business requirements and meet early time-to-market objectives.

Either way, the important point is that those requirements for IT services and IT components would determine how processes in the lifecycle are measured and managed, and thus how the performance and growth of professionals should be measured.

Metrics can be classified into three categories: financial metrics, learning and growth metrics, and organizational or process effectiveness metrics. An example of financial metrics is the expenses and total percentage of hours spent on projects or maintenance, while an example of learning and growth is the percentage of education pursued in a target skill area, certification in a professional area, and contribution to knowledge management.

Some examples of service quality metrics are shown in Table 5.6. Process quality metrics are the quality metrics related to efficient and effective process management.

Table 5.6 Examples of service quality metrics

Measure	Metric	Quality goal	Lower limit	Upper limit
Schedule	Variation against revised plan (%)	Within 7.5% of estimate	Not to be less than 7.5% of estimate	Not to exceed 7.5% of estimate
Effort	Variation against revised plan (%)	Within 10% of estimate	Not to be less than 10% of estimate	Not to exceed 10% of estimate
Cost	Variation against revised plan (%)	Within 10% of estimate	Not to be less than 10% of estimate	Not to exceed 10% of estimate
Defects	Variation against planned defect (%)	Within 10% of estimate	Not to be less than 10% of estimate	Not to exceed 10% of estimate
Productivity	Variation against productivity goal	Within 10% of estimate	Not to be less than 10% of estimate	Not to exceed 10% of estimate
Customer satisfaction	Customer satisfaction survey result	Greater than 8.9 on a range of 1 to 10	Not to be less than 8.9 on a range of 1 to 10	

Note: The figures in Table 5.6 are for illustrative purposes only and are not intended as generic targets. Organizations should consider and set their own targets.

5.5.3.2 Using organizational metrics

To be effective, measurements and metrics should be woven through the complete organization, touching the strategic as well as the tactical level. To successfully support the key business drivers,

the IT services manager needs to know what and how well each part of the organization contributes to the final success.

It is also important, when defining measurements for goals that support the IT services strategy, to remember that measurements must focus on results and not on efforts. Focus on the organizational output and try to get clear what the contribution is. Each stage in the service lifecycle has its processes and contribution to the service. Each stage of the lifecycle also has its roles, which contribute to the development or management of the service. Based on the process goals and the quality attributes of the service, goals and metrics can be defined for each role in the processes of the lifecycle.

5.5.4 Interpreting and using metrics

Results must be examined in the context of the objectives, environment and any external factors. Therefore after collecting the results, organizations will conduct measurement reviews to determine how well the indicators worked and how the results contribute to objectives.

Before starting to interpret the metrics and measures it is important to identify if the results that are being shown even make sense. If they do not, then instead of interpreting the results, take action to identify the reasons the results appear the way they do. The example used earlier in the chapter was of an organization that provided data for the service desk in which the data showed there were more first-contact resolutions at the service desk than there were incidents opened by the service desk. This is impossible and yet this organization was ready to distribute this report. When this kind of thing happens some questions need to be asked, such as:

- How did we collect this data?
- Who collected the data?
- What tools were used to collect the data?
- Who processed the data?
- How was the data processed?
- What could have led to the incorrect information?

When beginning to interpret the results it is important to know the data elements that make up the results, the purpose of producing the results and the expected normal ranges of the results.

Simply looking at some results and declaring a trend is dangerous. Figure 5.8 shows a trend that the service desk is opening fewer incidents over the last few months. One could believe that this is because there are fewer incidents or perhaps it is because the customers are not happy with the service that is being provided, so they go elsewhere for their support needs. Perhaps the organization has implemented a self-help knowledge base and some customers are now using this service instead of contacting the service desk. Some investigation is required to understand what is driving these metrics.

Figure 5.8 Number of incidents opened by service desk over time

One of the keys to proper interpretation is to understand whether there have been any changes to the service or if there were any issues that could have created the current results.

The chart can be interpreted in many ways so it would not be wise to share it without some discussion of the meaning of the results.

Figure 5.9 is another example of a service desk measurement. Using the same number of incidents we have now also provided the results of first contact resolution. The figure shows that not only are fewer incidents being opened, but the ability to restore service on first contact is also going down. Before coming to hasty conclusions, some questions need to be asked:

- What has happened that could drive down the number of incidents?
- What would impact our ability to restore service on the first contact?
- Did we hire new service desk analysts?
- Did we remove some services?
- Have we provided other means to access our services?
- Have other processes been implemented that could impact incident volume and first contact resolution?

Figure 5.9 Comparison of incidents opened and resolved on first contact by the service desk

In the case illustrated in Figure 5.9, the organization had implemented problem management. As the process matured and through the use of incident trend analysis, staff were able to use problem management to identify a couple of recurring incidents that created a lot of incident activity each month. Through root cause analysis and submitting a RFC, a permanent fix was implemented, thus stopping the recurring incidents. Through further analysis it was found that these few recurring incidents were able to be resolved on the first contact. By removing these incidents the opportunity to increase first contact resolution was also removed. During this time period the service desk also had some new hires.

Table 5.7 provides a current view and year-to-date (YTD) view for response times for three service desks. It provides a transaction count for each service, the minimum response time measured in seconds, the maximum response time measured in seconds and the average for the month. The table also provided the YTD average for each service. In order to understand if these numbers are good or not it is important to define the target for each service as well as the target for meeting the SLA.

Table 5.7 Response times for three service desks

Service measurement response time							
Service	Response times (seconds)						
	Current month				YTD	Percentage within SLA (99.5% is the target)	
	Count	Min	Max	Avg		Monthly	YTD

Service 1 Target = 1.5 seconds	1,003,919	1.20	66.25	3.43	1.53	99.54%	98.76%
Service 2 Target = 1.25 seconds	815,339	0.85	21.23	1.03	1.07	98.44%	99.23%
Service 3 Target = 2.5 seconds	899,400	1.13	40.21	2.12	2.75	96.50%	94.67%

When looking at the results for the three services it may appear that Service 2 is the best, and this might be because it handles fewer transactions each month than the other two services. Interpreting that Service 2 is the best by only looking at the numbers is dangerous, however. Investigations will find that Service 2 is a global service that is accessed 24 × 7 and the other two services have peak time utilization between 8 am and 7 pm. This is no excuse because the services are not hitting targets so further investigation needs to be conducted at the system and component levels to identify any issues that are creating the current response time results. It could be that the usage has picked up, which was not planned for, and some fine tuning on components can improve the response time.

5.5.5 Using measurement and metrics

Metrics can be used for multiple purposes such as to:

- Validate – are we supporting the strategy and vision?
- Justify – do we have the right targets and metrics?
- Direct – based on factual data, people can be guided to change behaviour
- Intervene – take corrective actions such as identifying improvement opportunities.

Service measurements and metrics should be used to drive decisions. Depending on what is being measured the decision could be strategic, tactical or operational. This is the case for CSI. There are many improvement opportunities but often only a limited budget to address the improvement opportunities, so decisions must be made. Which improvement opportunities will support the business strategy and goals, and which will support the IT goals and objectives? What are the ROI and VOI opportunities? ROI is also discussed in Chapters 2 and 4.

Another key use of measurement and metrics is for comparison purposes. Measures by themselves may tell the organization very little unless there is a standard orbaseline against which to assess the data. Measuring only one particular characteristic of performance in isolation is meaningless unless it is compared with something else that is relevant. The following comparisons are useful:

- Comparison against the baseline
- Comparison against a target or goal

- Comparison with other organizations – be sure to understand that the strategy, goals and objectives of other organizations may not align with yours so there may be driving factors in the other organization that you don't have or it could be the other way around
- Comparison over time such as day to day, week to week, month to month, quarter to quarter, or year to year
- Comparison between different business units
- Comparison between different services.

Measures of quality allow for measuring trends and the rate of change over a period of time. Examples could be measuring trends against standards that are set up either internally or externally and could include benchmarks, or they could be measuring trends with standards and targets to be established. This is often done when first setting up baselines.

A minor or short-term deviation from targets should not necessarily lead to an improvement initiative. It is important to set the criteria for the deviations before an improvement programme is initiated.

Comparing and analysing trends against service level targets or an actual SLA is important as it allows for early identification of fluctuations in service delivery or quality. This is important not only for internal service providers but also when services have been outsourced. It is important to identify any deviations and discuss them with theexternal service provider in order to avoid any supplier relationship problems. Speed and efficiency of communication when there are missed targets is essential to the continuation of a strong relationship.

Using measurements and metrics can also help define any external factors that may exist outside the control of the internal or external service provider. The real world needs to be taken into consideration. External factors could include anything from language barriers to governmental decisions.

Individual metrics and measures by themselves may tell an organization very little from a strategic or tactical point of view. Some types of metrics and measures are often more activity based than volume based, but are valuable from an operational perspective. Examples include:

- The services used
- The mapping of customers to services
- Frequency of use of each service
- Times of day each service is used
- The way each service is used (internally or externally through the web)
- The performance of each component used to provide the service
- The availability of each component used to provide the service.

Each of these measures by themselves will provide some information that is important to IT staff including the technical managers who are responsible for availability management and capacity management as well as those who may be responsible for a technology domain such as a server farm, an application or the network, but it is the examination and use of all the measurements and metrics together that delivers the real value. It is important for someone to own the responsibilities not only to look at these measurements as a whole but also to analyse trends and interpret the meaning of the metrics and measures.

5.5.6 Creating scorecards and reports

Service measurement information will be used for three main purposes:

- To report on the service to interested parties
- To compare against targets
- To identify improvement opportunities.

Reports must be appropriate and useful for all those who use them.

There are typically three distinct audiences for reporting purposes.

- **The business** Is it really focused on delivery to time and budget?
- **IT management** IT managers will be interested in the tactical and strategic results that support the business.
- **IT operational/technical managers** These managers will be concerned with the tactical and operational metrics that support better planning, coordination and scheduling of resources.
  The operational managers will be interested in their technology domain measurements such as component availability and performance.

Many organizations make the mistake of creating and distributing the same report to everyone. This does not provide value for everyone.

5.5.6.1 Creating scorecards that align to strategies

Reports and scorecards should be linked to overall strategy and goals. Using a balanced scorecard approach is one way to manage this alignment.

Figure 5.10 illustrates how the overall goals and objectives can be used to derive the measurements and metrics required to support the overall goals and objectives. The arrows point both ways because the strategy, goals and objectives will drive the identification of required KPIs and measurements, but it is also important to remember that the measures are input in KPIs and the KPIs support the goals in the balanced scorecard.

It is important to select the right measures and targets to be able to answer the ultimate question of whether the goals are being achieved and the overall strategy supported.

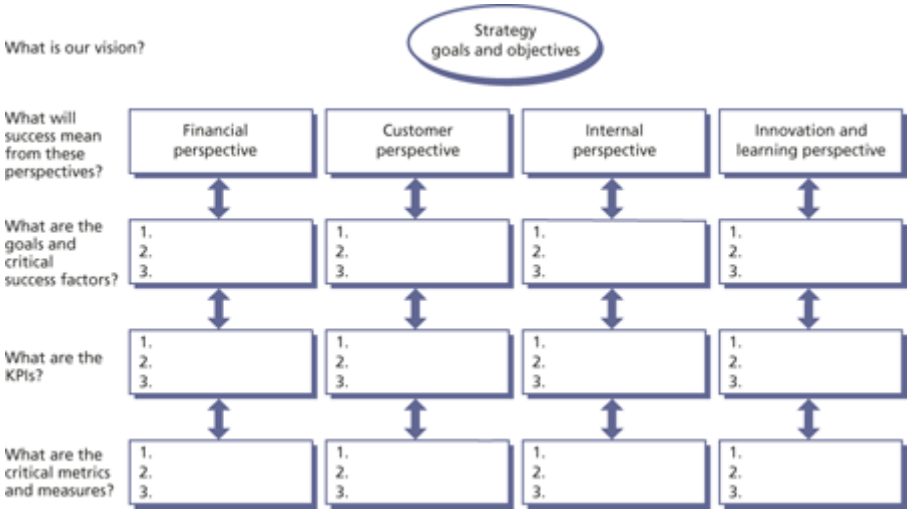


Figure 5.10 Deriving measurements and metrics from goals and objectives

The balanced scorecard is discussed in more detail in section 5.5.8.

5.5.6.2 Creating reports

When creating reports it is important to know their purpose and the details required. Reports can be used to provide information for a single month, or a comparison of the current month with other months to provide a trend for a certain time period. Reports can show whether service levels are being met or breached.

Before starting the design of any report it is also important to know the following:

- Who is the target audience of the report?
- What will the report be used for?
- Who is responsible for creating the report?
- How will the report be created?
- How frequently is the report to be created?
- What information will be produced, shared or exchanged?

One of the first items to consider is who is the target audience. Most senior managers don't want a report that is 50 pages long. They like to have a short summary report and access to supporting details if they are interested. Table 5.8 provides an example that will fit the needs of most senior managers. This report should be no longer than two pages but ideally a single page if that is achievable without sacrificing readability.

Table 5.8 An example of a summary report format

Report for the month of:

Monthly overview	This is a summary of the service measurement for the month and discusses any trends over the past few months. This section can also provide input into [details to be inserted].
Results	This section outlines the key results for the month.
What led to the results	Are there any issues or activities that contributed to the results for this month?
Actions to take	What action have you taken or would like to take to correct any undesirable results? Major deficiencies may require CSI involvement and the creation of a SIP.
Predicting the future	Define what you think the future results will be.

It is also important to know what report format the audience prefers. Some people like text reports, some like charts and graphs with lots of colour, and some like a combination. Be careful about the type of charts and graphs that are used. They must be understandable and not open to different interpretations.

Many reporting tools today produce canned reports but these may not meet everyone's business requirements for reporting purposes. It is wise to ensure that a selected reporting tool has flexibility for creating different reports, that it will be linked or support the goals and objectives, that its purpose is clearly defined, and that its target audience is identified.

Reports can be set up to show:

- **Results for a service** With supporting reports giving individual measurements on components
- **Health of a service management process** With certain process KPI results
- **Functional reports** Such as telephony reports for the service desk.

Figure 5.11 shows the duration of outages (in minutes) for a service. However, through analysis of the results, a direct relationship was discovered between failed changes and the duration of outages. Seeing this information together convinced an organization that it really needed to improve its change management process.

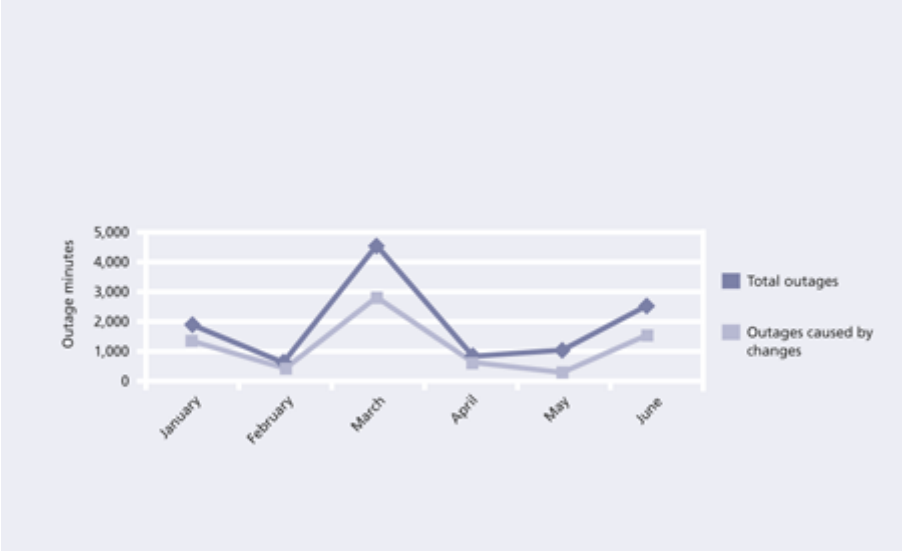


Figure 5.11 Reported outage minutes for a service

Table 5.9 is another example of a service measurement report. The report clearly states an objective and also provides a YTD status. The report compares this year's outage to last year's outage. The report also addresses the actual customer impact. Depending on needs, this report format can be used for many reporting purposes such as performance, SLAs etc.

Table 5.9 Service report of outage minutes compared to goal

Actual outage minutes compared to goal						
Objective	20% decrease in outages					
Status	18% decrease YTD					
Monthly report	Month 1	Month 2	Month 3	Month 4	Month 5	Month 6
Previous year's outage minutes						
This year's outage minutes						
Running YTD reduction						

Monthly indicator	Positive	Negative	Positive	Positive	Negative	Positive
Reduction in customer impact						
Objective	Decrease in number of customers impacted (%)					
Status						
Next steps						

Table 5.10 shows incident management data for the number of incidents by priority and the success of meeting the SLA for service restoration.

Table 5.10 Percentage of incidents meeting target time for service restoration

	Target	Month 1		Month 2	
		Number of Incidents	%	Number of Incidents	%
All incidents					
Within target		7,540	97.15	6,647	95.34
Missed target		221	2.85	325	4.66
Grand total		7,761		6,972	
Priority 1					
Within target	95% within 1 hour	24	77.42	17	77.27
Missed target		7	22.58	5	22.73
Grand total		31		22	
Priority 2					
Within target	90% within 4 hours	127	78.40	153	92.73
Missed target		35	21.60	12	7.27

Grand total		162		165	
Priority 3					
Within target	80% within 1 business day	2,532	89.66	2,176	90.03
Missed target		292	10.34	241	9.97
Grand total		2,824		2,417	
Priority 4					
Within target	70% within 2 business days	4,683	98.71	4,301	98.47
Missed target		61	1.29	67	1.53
Grand total		4,744		4,368	

Table 5.11 provides some sample KPIs for different processes. This is not an all-inclusive list but simply an example. Each organization will need to define what KPIs to report on.

Table 5.11 Sample key performance indicators

Process/function	KPI/description	Type	Progress indicator
Incident management	Incidents resolved within target time	Value	Meets/exceeds target times
Incident management	% of incidents closed – firstcall	Performance	Service desk only – target is 80%
Service desk	Abandon rate		Service desk with automatic call distribution (ACD). 5% or less goal (after 24 seconds)
Incident management	Count of incidents submitted by support group	Compliance	Consistency in number of incidents – investigation is warranted for (1) rapid increase, which may indicate infrastructure investigation, and (2) rapid decrease, which may

			indicate compliance issues
Problem management	% of repeated problems over time	Quality	Problems that have been removed from the infrastructure and have re-occurred. Target: less than 1% over a 12-month rolling timeframe
Problem management	% root cause with permanent fix	Quality	Calculated from problem start date to permanent fix found. This may not include implementation of permanent fix. Internal target: fix 90% of problems within 40 days. External target: fix 80% of problems within 30 days. External target = third party/vendor
Problem management	% and number of incidents raised to problem management	Compliance	Sorted by infrastructure (internal and external) and development (internal and external)
Change management	% of RFCs successfully implemented without back out or issues	Quality	Grouped by infrastructure/development
Change management	% of RFCs that are emergencies	Performance	Sort by infrastructure or development – and by emergency quick fix (service down) or businessrequirement
Service asset and configuration management	Number of configuration item (CI) additions or updates	Compliance	CI additions or updates broken down by group – configuration management database (CMDB) orchange modules
Service asset	Number of records	Performance	Number of associations

and configuration management	related to CI		grouped by process
Release and deployment management	% of releases using exceptions	Value	Exceptions are criteria deemed mandatory – identify by groups
Release and deployment management	% of releases bypassing process	Compliance	Identify groups bypassing release process
Capacity management	Action required	Value	Number of services that require action vs. total number of systems
Capacity management	Capacity-related problems	Quality	Number of problems caused by capacity issues sorted by group

There are many techniques used today to measure the effectiveness and efficiency of IT and the services it provides. Often organizations use a combination of methods rather than just one individual technique. CSI should assume responsibility for ensuring that the quality of service required by the business is provided within the imposedcost constraints. CSI is also instrumental in determining if IT is still on course with the achievement of planned implementation targets and, if not, plotting course corrections to bring it back into alignment.

However, it must be remembered that although the measurement of progress is vital it is not the end product; rather, it is a means to an end. Often people gather measurements and produce reports as a full-time occupation. It is essential that the production of statistics is not seen as the sole objective of the strategyimplementation but rather an indicator of its progress and success.

5.5.7 Setting targets

If you have nothing to aim for it is probable that is what you will hit. The CSFs and SLRs will give vital information as to what we are trying to achieve and it is important that we keep the targets in mind when measuring and reporting. Targets set by management are quantified objectives to be attained. They express the aims of the service orprocess at any level and provide the basis for the identification of problems and early progress towards solutions and improvement opportunities.

Service targets are often defined in response to business requirements or they may result from new policy or regulatory requirements. SLM through SLAs will often drive the target that is required. Unfortunately, many organizations have had targets set with no clear understanding of the IT organization's capability to meet the target. That is why it is important that SLM looks at not only the business requirements but also IT capability to meet business requirements.

When first setting targets against a new service it may be advisable to consider a phased target approach, as the target in the first quarter may be lower than the second quarter. With a new service it would be unwise to enter into a SLA until overall capabilities are clearly identified. Even with the best service design and transition, no one ever knows how a service will perform until it is actually in production.

Setting targets is just as important as selecting the right measures. It is important that targets are realistic but challenging. Good targets will be SMART (specific, measurable, achievable, relevant and time-bound). Targets should be clear, unambiguous and easy to understand by those who will be working toward them.

Remember that the choice of measures and their targets can affect the behaviour of those who are carrying out the work that is being measured. That is why it is always important to have a balanced approach.

Let's look at an example of common measures that are captured for the service desk. It is common for the service desk to measure the average speed of answer, number of calls answered and call duration. These measures are often collected through telephony systems. If a service desk manager emphasizes the above measures more than others such as quality incidents, first contact resolution, customer satisfaction etc., it may be that the service desk analysts are focused on how many calls they can answer in a day and how quickly they can complete one call and start the next. When this happens, with no thought about the quality of service being provided, how well incidents are being handled or how well the customer is being treated, it will result in negative behaviour that is counter-productive to the goal of providing good service. The focus is only on volume and not quality.

When setting targets it is important to determine the baseline: this is the starting point from which you will measure improvement.

5.5.8 Balanced scorecard

This is a technique developed by Kaplan and Norton[4] in the mid-1990s and involves the definition and implementation of a measurement framework covering four different perspectives: customer, internal business, learning and growth, and financial. The four linked perspectives provide a balanced scorecard to support strategicactivities and objectives, and can be used to measure overall IT performance.

The balanced scorecard is complementary to ITIL. Some of the links to IT include the following:

- **Client perspective** IT as a service provider, primarily documented in SLAs
- **Internal processes** Operational excellence utilizing incident management, problem management, change management, service asset and configuration management, and release and deployment management, as well as other IT processes; successful delivery of IT projects
- **Learning and growth** Business productivity, flexibility of IT, investments in software, professional learning and development
- **Financial** Align IT with the business objectives, manage costs, manage risks, deliver value; financial management for IT services is the process used to allocate costs and calculate ROI.

Kaplan and Norton first introduced the idea of a balanced scorecard in the early 1992 *Harvard Business Review*. The need for such a method emerged out of a growing recognition that financial measures alone were insufficient to manage the modern organization. Much of the emphasis in today's work environment is preparation to achieve financial goals, achieve process innovations, train workers, and create and maintain new kinds of relationship with customers.

The balanced scorecard is not simply a measurement system but a management system that enables organizations to clarify their vision, mission, goals, objectives and strategies and to translate them into action. When fully deployed, the balanced scorecard transforms strategic planning from an academic exercise into the nerve centre of an enterprise. It provides feedback on both the internal business processes and external outcomes in order to continually improve strategic performance and results.

The balanced scorecard, as an aid to organizational performance management, is a common method of tracking metrics and performing trend analysis. It helps to focus on not only financial targets but also internal processes, customers, and learning and growth issues. The balance should be found between four perspectives, which are focused around the following questions:

- **Customers** What do customers expect of IT provision?
- **Internal processes** What must IT excel at?
- **Learning and growth** How does IT guarantee that the business will keep generating added value in the future?
- **Financial** What is the cost of IT?

5.5.8.1 Cascading the balanced scorecard

Many organizations are structured around strategic business units (SBUs) with each business unit focusing on a specific group of products or services offered by the business. The structure of IT may match the SBU organization or may offer services to the SBU from a common, shared services IT organization or both. This last hybrid approach tends to put the central infrastructure group in the shared services world and the business solutions or application development group in the SBU itself. This often results in non-productive finger-pointing when things go wrong. The business itself is not interested in this blame-storming exercise but rather in the quality of IT service provision. Therefore, the balanced scorecard is best deployed at the SBU level (see Figure 5.12).

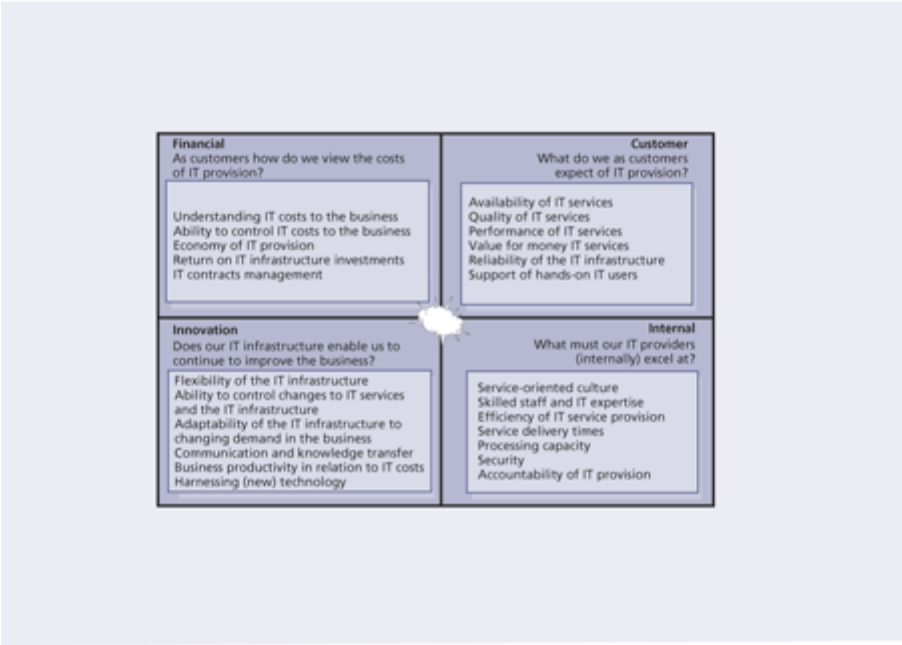


Figure 5.12 IT balanced scorecard

Once a balanced scorecard has been defined at the SBU level, it can be cascaded down through the organization. For each strategic business level measure and related target, business units can define additional measures and targets that support the strategic goal and target. In addition, action plans and resource allocation decisions can be made with reference to how they contribute to the strategic balanced scorecard. As with any measurement system it is important to link the reward systems to the balanced scorecard objectives. Table 5.12 is an example of a balanced scorecard for a service desk.

Table 5.12 Service desk balanced scorecard example

Financial goal	Performance indicator	Customer goal	Performance indicator
Ability to control service desk costs Economy of service desk Value of service desk	Accuracy of service desk cost forecasts Competitiveness of service Costs of service desk	Quality of service desk services Reliability of service desk Performance of service desk Support of hands-on users	Availability of service desk (in IT users' perception) Compliance to SLAs Restoration of service On-time service delivery Number of registered user complaints about IT

Innovation goal	Performance indicator	Internal goal	Performance indicator
Business productivity Service culture Flexibility	Minimize mean time to restore service (MTRS) Improvements in business turnover Reduction in business costs ascribable to the service desk New ways to improve service	Incident resolution Elapsed time for incidents Meetings SLAs Professionalism	Percentage of first-time-right incident resolution Time spent on resolution Incidents resolved within SLAs Treating customers with respect

The balanced scorecard is not an exclusive IT feature. On the contrary, many organizations use scorecards in other departments – even at the board level.

Start very conservatively when implementing the balanced scorecard. Start with two to three, maybe four, goals and metrics for each perspective. Organizations have to make choices; for many, this will be extremely difficult and time consuming.

Implementation is not the most difficult part of using the balanced scorecard – consolidation is. Usually, consultants are employed to assist in the introduction of the balanced scorecard. The challenge is to keep measuring once they are gone. The danger is in the temptation to fall back on prior measuring techniques or not measuring at all.

5.5.8.2 The balanced scorecard and measurement-based management

The balanced scorecard approach focuses on including customer-defined quality, continual improvement, employee empowerment, and measurement-based management and feedback.

The balanced scorecard incorporates feedback around internal business process outputs, as in total quality management (TQM), but also adds a feedback loop around the outcomes of business strategies. This creates a double-loop feedback process in the balanced scorecard.

An old saying goes: 'You can't improve what you can't measure.' Metrics must be developed based on the priorities of the strategic plan, which provides the key businessdrivers and criteria for metrics that managers most desire to watch. Services and processes are then designed to collect information relevant to these metrics. Strategicmanagement can then examine the outcomes of various measured services, processes and strategies and track the results to guide the company and provide feedback. The value of metrics is in their ability to provide a factual basis for defining:

- Strategic feedback to show the present status of the organization from many perspectives for decision makers
- Diagnostic feedback into various services and processes to guide improvements on a continual basis

- Trends in performance over time as the metrics are tracked
- Feedback around the measurement methods themselves, and which metrics should be tracked
- Quantitative inputs to forecasting methods and models for decision-support systems.

5.5.9 SWOT analysis

SWOT stands for strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats. This section provides guidance on properly conducting and using the result of a SWOT analysis, how to select the scope and range of this common assessment tool, as well as the common mistakes people make when using a SWOT analysis.

This technique involves the review and analysis of four specific areas of an organization: the internal strengths and weaknesses, and the external opportunities and threats. Once analysed, actions should be taken to:

- Develop, exploit and capitalize on the organization's **strengths**
- Reduce, minimize or remove **weaknesses**
- Take maximum advantage of **opportunities**
- Manage, mitigate and eliminate **threats**.

SWOT analyses can be performed quickly and can be used to target a specific area rather than looking at the entire enterprise.

5.5.9.1 Purpose

A SWOT analysis is a strategic planning tool used to evaluate the strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats involved in a project, business venture or any other situation requiring a decision. Sizing up a firm's internal strengths and weaknesses and its external opportunities and threats provides a quick overview of a firm's strategic situation.

5.5.9.2 How to use

The first step is to define the desired end state or objective. This objective definition must be explicit and approved by all participants in the process.

Once the objective is identified, SWOT are discovered and listed:

- **Strengths** are internal attributes of the organization that are helpful to the achievement of the objective.
- **Weaknesses** are internal attributes of the organization that are harmful to the achievement of the objective.
- **Opportunities** are external conditions that are helpful to the achievement of the objective.
- **Threats** are external conditions that are harmful to the achievement of the objective.

Correct identification of the SWOT is essential because subsequent steps in the process are all derived from the SWOT. To ensure a successful SWOT analysis, it is a good idea to ensure that the objective follows the SMART principle which stands for specific, measurable, achievable, relevant and time-bound.

SWOT analyses are used as inputs to the creative generation of possible strategies, by asking and answering the following four questions many times:

- How can we use each strength?
- How can we stop each weakness?
- How can we exploit each opportunity?
- How can we defend against each threat?

5.5.9.3 Scope, reach and range

SWOT analyses can be performed at various levels, from an individual perspective to a departmental, divisional or even corporate perspective. It is important to consolidate the lower hierarchical management levels before proceeding to the next level.

For example, all the members of a functional team perform an individual SWOT analysis. Then a SWOT for the functional team is performed. Each functional team within the department does the same and a departmental SWOT is conducted and so on until a corporate SWOT is completed.

It is also possible to conduct a SWOT analysis for a service or a process. Table 5.13 provides a list of factors to consider in performing a SWOT analysis, while Table 5.14 gives an example of an analysis performed for CSI.

Table 5.13 SWOT analysis

Strength: things to consider	Weaknesses: things to consider
Core competencies	No clear strategic direction
Financial resources	Obsolete facilities
Reputable buyers	Low profitability
Acknowledged as market-leader	Lack of managerial depth and
Well-conceived functional-area strategies	Missing some key competenci
Access to economies of scale	Poor track record for performa
Little competitive pressure	Falling behind in R&D
Proprietary technology	Too narrow product line
Cost advantages	Weak market image
Strong campaigns	Weak distribution network
Product innovation	Below-average marketing skill
Proven management	Unable to finance needed cha
Ahead on experience curve	Higher overall unit costs
Better development/production capability	
Superior technology	
Opportunities: things to consider	**Threats: things to consider**
Ability to serve additional customer groups or expand into new	Entry of lower-cost foreign cor

market or segments	Rising sales of substitute prod
Ways to expand product line to meet broader range of customer needs	Slower market growth
Ability to transfer skills or technological know-how to new products or businesses	Adverse shifts in foreign excha foreign governments
Integrating forward or backward	Costly regulatory requirement
Falling trade barriers in attractive foreign markets	Potentially sudden deregulatio
Complacency among rival firms	Vulnerability to recession and
Ability to grow rapidly because of strong increases in market demand	Growing bargaining power of
Emerging new technologies	Adverse demographic change

Table 5.14 Sample SWOT analysis for CSI

Strengths	Weaknesses
People with the right attitude, values and commitment	Reactive organization
Management commitment to CSI	Immature processes
CSI manager in place	Lack of monitoring and reporting tools
	Insufficient data
Opportunities	**Threats**
Increased market share of current services	Competition
Become a third-party service provider	New regulatory requirements
Efficiencies through more integrated operations	New technology
Be quicker to market with new products	Lack of trained staff
	Lack of knowledge management

5.5.9.4 Common pitfalls of a SWOT analysis

The failure to correctly identify the end state will result in wasted resources and possibly failure. It is therefore important to align the SWOT analysis with the organization's vision, mission, goals and objectives. The following errors have been observed in published accounts of SWOT analysis. Making these errors can result in serious losses:

- Conducting a SWOT analysis before defining and agreeing on the desired end state
- Confusing opportunities (external to the company) with strengths (internal to the company); keep them separate
- Confusing opportunities with possible strategies; it may also be useful to keep in mind that SWOT is a description of conditions, while possible strategies define actions.

5.6 Return on investment

5.6.1 Creating a return on investment

The ROI challenge needs to take into consideration many factors. On one side is the investment cost. This is the money an organization pays to improve services andservice management processes. These costs will be internal resource costs, tool costs, consulting costs etc. It is often easy to come up with these costs.

On the other side is what an organization can gain in a return. These returns are often hard to define or quantify. In order to be able to compute these items it is important to know the following:

- What is the cost of downtime? This includes both lost productivity of the customers and the loss of revenue.
- What is the cost of doing rework? How many failed changes have to be backed out and reworked?
- What is the cost of carrying out redundant work? Many organizations that don't have clear processes in place and good communication often find that redundant work is being done.
- What is the cost of non-value added projects? Many projects have been fully funded and resourced, but because of changing requirements they no longer add value. Despite this the project moves forward instead of being stopped.
- What is the cost of late delivery of an application? Does this impact on the ability to deliver a new service or possibly an additional way to deliver an existing service?
- What is the cost of escalating incidents to second and third level support groups instead of resolving incidents at the first level? There is often a difference in utilization staff in second level and third level support groups. The more we escalate incidents to these groups the less time they have to work on projects that they may also be assigned to.
- What is the fully allocated hourly cost for different employee levels?

These are only some of the things that have to be considered when creating a ROI statement. The cost of not implementing the improvement also has to be taken into account.

There are different approaches to measuring and reporting on availability. Availability is a good measure to understand the cost of lost productivity, the cost of not being able to complete a business transaction, or the true cost of downtime. Approaches include measuring:

- Impact by minutes lost – this is a calculation on the duration of downtime multiplied by the number of customers impacted. This can be used to report on lost customer productivity.
- Impact by business transaction – this calculation is based on the number of business transactions that could not be processed during the downtime. This measurement provides a better indication of business impact.
- The true cost of downtime that has been agreed on.

Other areas of warranty such as security, recoverability and ensuring there is sufficient capacity also have to be taken into account.

5.6.2 Establishing the business case

The business case should articulate the reason for undertaking a service or process improvement initiative. As far as possible, data and evidence should be provided relating to the costs and expected benefits of undertaking process improvement, noting that:

- Process redesign activities are more complex and therefore more costly than initially expected.
- Organizational change impact is often underestimated.
- Changed process usually requires changed competencies and tools, adding further to the expense.

In developing a business case, the focus should not be limited to ROI but also on the business value that service improvement brings to the organization and its customers (VOI), because ROI alone does not capture the real value of service improvement. Should an organization choose to focus solely on ROI, much of the potential benefit achievable will not be disclosed nor reviewed after the fact. This could in turn result in worthwhile initiatives not being approved, or a review of the initiative revealing apparent failure, when it was actually successful.

Not surprisingly, most business and IT executives expect a return on their investment. It is important to recognize that an investment in CSI, and realizing its benefits, can vary depending on the customer base, size of IT and maturity of the ITIL process implemented. Also benefits will cross existing organizational boundaries and true benefits can only be captured in collaboration with the users/customers and ITIL process owners. The focus is therefore to work with the stakeholders to develop business and IT specific indicators that link business value measures with contributions from IT. In other words, how does ITIL process improvement add value to the organization?

Examples of business value measures are:

- Time to market
- Customer retention
- Market share.

IT's contribution can be captured through:

- Gaining agility
- Managing knowledge
- Enhancing knowledge
- Reducing costs
- Reducing risk.

IT should begin by defining the types of business values that each improvement will contribute to.

As an example, the US Sarbanes-Oxley legislation and other international laws require that the business processes be certified to produce financial reports in addition to certifying the reports themselves. Sarbanes-Oxley is about improving transparency and accountability in business processes and corporate accounting to restoreconfidence in public markets. It regulates processes and business practices. Therefore having a higher level of ITIL maturity will facilitate regulatory compliance.

Without a mature process framework it is natural for organizations to take an *ad hoc* approach to compliance. They address requirements as they emerge, through a series of one-offs, just-in-time projects. Since compliance affects a lot of ongoing business activity, this is disruptive, increases the required effort and becomes time-consuming and very expensive.

If an investment is well conceived, solid and delivers results, it can lead to cost savings in the long run. Therefore it is important to choose the right investment and make sure they deliver. When presenting a business case for an ITIL process improvement project, it is important to help executives understand the business value of the ITIL process framework. The tendency for most IT executives is to over-emphasize technology and tools. Technology is a means to an end. The benefits are realized from the business changes. It is important to address how people and processes will change, from 'as is' to the 'to be' state.

The 'as is' stage can be defined as a baseline. Capturing the baseline of the performance measurements affected by the proposed implementation is paramount to the business case. The careful preparation of the baseline will facilitate meaningful business information and level setting about relevant business issues, allowing strategicalignment to take place. The focus should be to develop cause-and-effect metrics to link the benefits against the measurements selected along with the impact on other areas of the enterprise. The metrics should be monitored before, during and after the ITIL implementation to determine how the projected values are being delivered.

Another aspect to consider in business case development is situations where value will be lost by not undertaking process improvement activities. There will be situations where failure to take action will severely impact the business and IT – the value of process improvement may, in fact, not be value added, but value retained.

As a final note, care should be taken in developing the business case to ensure that the success criteria are clearly defined, showing how they are to be measured, and when they are going to be measured.

5.6.3 Expectations – what's in it for me?

Considerations for business executives include:

- The benefits of ITIL process improvements
- What impact it has on my business
- Revenue increase
- Cost reduction
- VOI.

Considerations for the chief finance officer include:

- The ROI
- Payback time.

Considerations for IT include:

- How ITIL benefits translate to business benefits. Find one or two compelling reasons why the organization should spend the time and money.

Determine the current or anticipated concern of the organization about IT. Estimate the cost if the status quo were to remain and subsequently estimate the savings that could be realized if the IT service management (ITSM) processes were put in place or improved. Examples include new lines of business overseas, poor response timeor time taken to handle incidents and problems, and the number of incidents in the organization.

5.6.4 Business cases in a data-poor environment

Organizations intending to undertake service improvement activities may find themselves in a situation where the lack of process means that there is no viable body of data or evidence to quantify expected benefits, ROI or VOI. How, then, does such an organization justify process improvement, or recognize how much expenditure is appropriate to achieve cost-effective improvements?

An approach that circumvents this situation is to gain approval to establish basic measurement capabilities, as a means of gathering consistent data. This may be as simple as ensuring that all IT staff record data in a consistent fashion, or start measuring activities or outcomes that are not currently captured. After an agreed period of data capture, some evidence will exist to support (or perhaps not support) a process improvement initiative.

Another approach is to undertake a process maturity assessment of current processes, to identify which processes are most divergent from ITIL practices. It should, however, be noted that this activity will only identify the absence of process and/or data. A process maturity assessment will not in itself provide the data to justify how much to spend on improving process.

Example of good management

XYZ Limited has grown rapidly from a single-site to a multi-site environment and now employs 1,500 people, up from 250 people two years ago. The IT group has struggled to match the business growth with growth in process consistency and service delivery. The business is demanding that the IT group performs better as the shortcomings in IT service are now impacting the business bottom-line.

The IT manager identifies that lack of consistent process and business focus are the roadblock to delivering better service to the business. She realizes that the staff are working very hard, but are often doing re-work or repairing self-inflicted errors. While good technicians, they are averse to documenting activities or outcomes.

Data and measurement are currently inconsistent. While she knows average business and IT staff salary costs, the costs of service outage etc. are not known nor can they be calculated using current data.

Rather than requesting funding to undertake process improvements, the IT manager requests funding for a pilot project to establish a rudimentary measurement framework to start capturing data in a standard fashion, using more or less existing processes. This pilot initiative after three months provides clear evidence that the true failure rate of changes is much higher than previously expected, and a key contributor to business and IT loss of productivity.

Armed with this evidence, the IT manager prepares a business case detailing some of the current deficiencies and expected benefits and returns to be delivered from properly quantifying process gaps and undertaking appropriate process improvement.

Where organizations establish a basic measurement and monitoring capability, some caution should be exercised regarding the quality of this data: be aware of limitations of new data. Even if the data doesn't make any sense, this is reason enough to explore the opportunity for improvements.

It is important that once the decision to start capturing and reporting on data is made, an initial baseline is created so improvements can be measured against it.

5.6.5 Measuring benefits achieved

While the initial identification of benefits is an estimate of those likely to be realized by the proposed process improvement initiative, there is also a need subsequently to measure the benefits actually achieved. These measurements attest to whether the improvement activity achieved the intended outcomes and should consider whether:

- The envisaged improvements were realized
- The benefits arising from the improvements were achieved
- The target ROI was achieved
- The intended value-added was actually achieved (VOI)
- The outcomes of the preceding points lead to further process improvement actions being re-evaluated
- Enough time has passed before measuring the benefits. Some benefits will not be immediately apparent, and it is likely that benefits will continue to change over time, as ongoing costs and ongoing benefits continue to move.

A further consideration in the measurement of benefits is that data quality and measurement precision pre- and post-improvement could be different, thus giving rise to the direct comparison not being valid. If this is the case, the data will need to be normalized before validating benefits.

In 2006, the US state of North Carolina implemented some improvements based on the ITIL framework. The improvements took place in a span of less than three months. ITS is the name of the state's IT organization. These are the results of tactical quick-win efforts targeted in tandem with the training programme and the state's awareness campaign. This information is reproduced with permission:

- IT has improved its ability to resolve incidents within its target timeframe by 32%.
- IT has improved its ability to resolve service requests within its target timeframe by 20%.
- Change management process compliance increased more than twofold resulting in fewer incidents and reduced downtime.

The first two processes to be developed and implemented were incident and change management. As with most organizations, the state of North Carolina already had an existing change and incident process. This organization started showing immediate improvement before any formal improvement programme was implemented simply by identifying and communicating the key metrics that were going to be reviewed by senior management. Staff began following their existing process simply because they knew reporting against certain performance measures had started and that these performance measures were discussed among senior managers. Not only were these discussions held but there was clear guidance

that the performance measures had to improve. These improvements can easily be translated into overallbusiness improvements.

5.7 Service reporting

This section will look into the various aspects of reporting such as identifying the purpose, the target audience and what the report will be used for.

As discussed in Chapter 4 a significant amount of data is collated and monitored by IT in the daily delivery of quality service to the business; however, only a small subset is of real interest and importance to the business. Most data and its meaning are more suited to the internal management needs of IT.

The business likes to see a historical representation of the past period's performance that portrays its experience; however, it is more concerned with those historical events that continue to be a threat going forward, and how IT intends to militate against such threats.

Cross-referenced data must still be presented which align precisely to any contracted, chargeable elements of the delivery, which may or may not be technical depending on the business focus and language used within contracts and SLAs.

It is not satisfactory simply to present reports that depict adherence (or otherwise) to SLAs, which in themselves are prone to statistical ambiguity. IT needs to build an actionable approach to reporting: this is what happened, this is what we did, this is how we will ensure it doesn't impact you again, and this is how we are working to improve the delivery of IT services generally.

A reporting ethos that focuses on the future as strongly as it focuses on the past also provides the means for IT to market its wares directly aligned to the positive or negative experiences of the business.

5.7.1 Reporting policy and rules

An ideal approach to building a business-focused service-reporting framework is to take the time to define and agree the policy and rules with the business and service design about how reporting will be implemented and managed.

This includes:

- Targeted audience(s) and the related business views on what the service delivered is
- Agreement on what to measure and report
- Agreed definitions of all terms and boundaries
- Basis of all calculations
- Reporting schedules
- Access to reports and medium to be used
- Meetings scheduled to review and discuss reports.

5.7.2 Right content for the right audience

Numerous policies and rules can exist as long as it is clear for each report which policies and rules have been applied, e.g. one policy may be applied to manufacturing whereas a variant may be more suited to the sales team. However all policies and rules form part of the single reporting framework.

Once the framework, policies and rules are in place, targeting suitably styled reports becomes simply a task of translating flat historical data into meaningful business views (which can be automated). These need to be annotated around the key questions, threats, mitigations and improvements such data provoke. Reports can then be presented via the medium of choice, e.g. paper-based hard copies, online soft copies, web-enabled dynamic HTML, current snapshot whiteboards, or real-time portal/dashboards.

Simple and effective customizable and automated reporting is crucial to a successful, ongoing reporting system that is seen as adding value to the business. Over time, many of the initial standard reports may become obsolete in favour of the regular production of custom reports which have been shaped to meet changing business needs and become the standard.

The end result is the targeted recipient having clear, unambiguous and relevant information in a language and style that they understand and like, accessible in the medium of their choice, and detailing the delivery of IT into their environment within their boundaries.

5.8 CSI and other service management processes

CSI activities make extensive use of methods and practices found in many ITIL processes throughout the lifecycle of a service. Far from being redundant, the use of the outputs in the form of flows, matrices, statistics or analysis reports provides valuable insight into the service's design and operation. This information, combined with new business requirements, technology specifications, IT capabilities, budgets, trends and possibly legislation, is vital to CSI to determine what needs to be improved – prioritize it and suggest improvements if required.

5.8.1 Availability management

Availability management's methods are part of the measuring process explained in Chapter 4. They are part of the measuring process – gathering, processing and analysing activities. When the information is provided to CSI in the form of a report or presentation, it becomes part of CSI's gathering activity. For more details on each method, please consult *ITIL Service Design*.

Availability management provides IT with the business and user perspective about how deficiencies in the infrastructure and underpinning process and procedures impact the business operation. The use of business-driven metrics can demonstrate this impact in real terms and help quantify the benefits of improvement opportunities.

Availability management plays an important role in helping the IT support organization recognize where it can add value by exploiting technical skills and competencies in an availability context. The continual improvement technique can be used by availability management to harness this technical capability. This can be used with either small groups of technical staff or a wider group within a workshop environment. The information provided by availability management is made available to CSI through theavailability management information system (AMIS).

This section provides practical usage and details on how each availability management method mentioned below can be used in various activities of CSI.

5.8.1.1 Component failure impact analysis

Component failure impact analysis (CFIA) identifies single points of failure, IT services at risk from failure of various CIs and the alternatives that are available should a CI fail. It should also be used to assess the existence and validity of recovery procedures for the selected CIs. The same approach can be used for a single IT service by mapping the component CIs against the vital business functions and users supported by each component.

When a single point of failure is identified, the information is provided to CSI. This information, combined with business requirements, enables CSI to make recommendations on how to address the failure.

5.8.1.2 Fault tree analysis

Fault tree analysis (FTA) is a technique that can be used to determine a chain of events that has caused an incident, or may cause an incident in the future. It offers detailed models of availability, and makes a representation of a chain of events using Boolean algebra and notation. Essentially FTA distinguishes between four events: basic events, resulting events, conditional events and trigger events.

When provided to CSI, FTA information indicates which part of the infrastructure, process or service was responsible in the service disruptions. This information, combined with business requirements, enables CSI to make recommendations about how to address the fault.

5.8.1.3 Service failure analysis

Service failure analysis (SFA) is a technique designed to provide a structured approach to identify end-to-end availability improvement opportunities that deliver benefits to the user. Many of the activities involved in SFA are closely aligned with those of problem management. In a number of organizations these activities are performed jointly by problem and availability management. SFA should attempt to identify improvement opportunities that benefit the end user. It is therefore important to take an end-to-end view of the service requirements.

CSI and SFA work hand in hand. SFA identifies the business impact of an outage on a service, system or process. This information, combined with business requirements, enables CSI to make recommendations about how to address improvement opportunities.

5.8.1.4 Technical observation

A technical observation (TO) is a prearranged gathering of specialist technical support staff from within IT support. They are brought together to focus on specific aspects of IT availability. The TO's purpose is to monitor events in real time as they occur, with the specific aim of identifying improvement opportunities within the current IT infrastructure. The TO is best suited to delivering proactive business and end-user benefits from within the real-time IT environment. Bringing together specialist technical staff to observe specific activities and events within the IT infrastructure and operational processes creates an environment to identify improvement opportunities.

The TO gathers, processes and analyses information about the situation. Too often the TO is reactive by nature and is assembled hastily to deal with an emergency. Why wait? If the TO is included as part of the launch of a new service, system or process for example, a lot of the issues inherent to any new component would be identified and dealt with more quickly.

One of the best examples of a TO is the mission control room for a space agency. All the specialists from all aspects of the mission are gathered in one room. Space agencies don't wait for the rocket to be launched and experience a problem before gathering specialists to monitor, observe and provide feedback. They set it up well before the actual launch and practise monitoring, observing and providing feedback.

Certainly, launching a rocket is very costly, but so is launching a new service, system or process. Can the business afford a catastrophic failure of a new enterprise resource planning (ERP) application, for example? Incidentally, rocket launches are often aborted seconds before the launch. Shouldn't organizations (including yours) do the same when someone discovers a major potential flaw in a service or system? CSI starts from the beginning and includes preventing things from failing in the first place. Let's fix the flaw before it goes into production instead of fixing the fixes (what a concept!). This information, combined with business requirements, enables CSI to make recommendations about how to address the TO's findings.

5.8.1.5 Expanded incident lifecycle

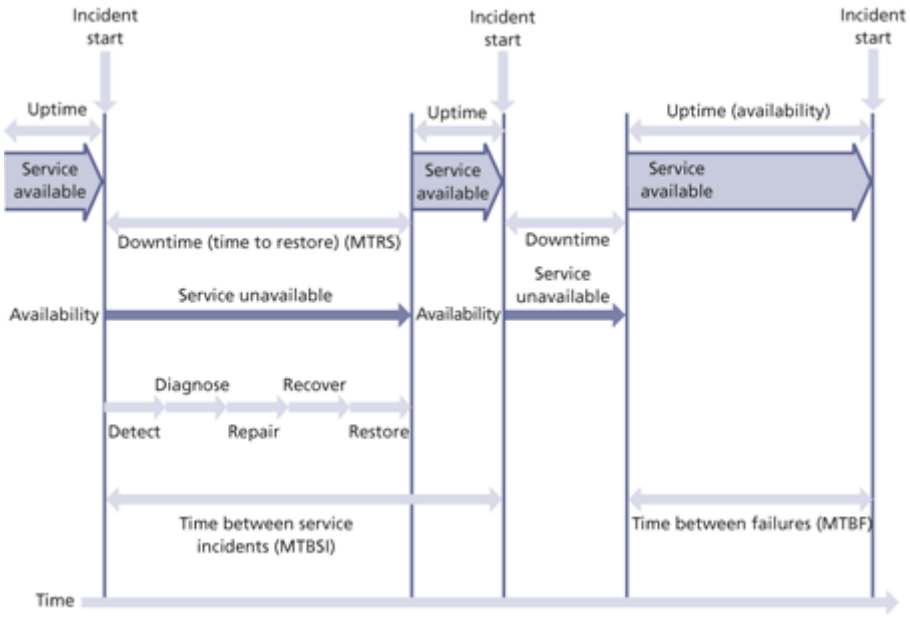


Figure 5.13 The expanded incident lifecycle

First, let's define a few items:

- **Availability management** The process responsible for defining, analysing, planning, measuring and improving all aspects of the availability of IT services. Availability management is

responsible for ensuring that all IT infrastructure, processes, tools, roles etc. are appropriate for the agreed service level targets for availability.

- **Expanded incident lifecycle** A technique to help with the technical analysis of incidents affecting the availability of components and IT services (see Figure 5.13). Theexpanded incident lifecycle is further made up of two parts: time to restore service (also known as downtime) and time between failures (also known as uptime). There is a diagnosis part to the incident lifecycle as well as repair, restoration and recovery of the service.

Let's assume that CSI has decided to improve the incident lifecycle by reducing the mean time to restore service (MTRS) and expanding the mean time between failures(MTBF).

Here is an example of how availability management can assist in reducing downtime in the expanded incident lifecycle by using many techniques:

- **Monitoring (detection of incident)** By adequately monitoring for availability of vital business functions through automated monitoring tools (set at the right threshold) that record and escalate incidents, the time it takes to detect and record incidents is reduced.
- **Incident recording** Since one of availability management's goals is to 'optimize the ... support organization', educating and training first-line staff as well as simplifying and/or automating incident recording helps reduce the time it takes to record incidents.
- **Investigation** Using the FTA method, availability management assists in reducing the time to investigate by creating proper investigation procedures for incident management staff. The same logic applies to the diagnosis of the incident cause, resolution and recovery.

Here is an example of how availability management can assist in increasing up-time in the expanded incident lifecycle by using many techniques:

- Using SFA, availability management can make recommendations to increase the reliability of components, thus reducing the likelihood of an incident occurring in the first place.
- Scheduling and performing adequate and required internal maintenance of components (maintainability), availability management can help to increase the resilienceof components, thus reducing the likelihood of an incident causing an outage.
- Ensuring that external maintenance of components (serviceability) is properly scheduled and performed by external vendors, availability management can help to increase the resilience of components, thus reducing the likelihood of an incident causing an outage.
- Conducting a CFIA to predict and evaluate the impact on IT service availability arising from component failures assists in identifying single points of failure. Availability management will either submit recommendations for enhancements to the resilience and reliability of such components or provide better troubleshooting procedures to the support groups.
- Implementing security recommendations coming from information security management regarding the confidentiality, integrity and availability of associated data helps reduce malicious or unauthorized access to data, ensuring data integrity, and thus reducing the likelihood of an incident occurring or decreasing the time it takes to respond to or resolve an incident.

5.8.2 Capacity management

This section provides practical usage and details about how each capacity management method mentioned below can be used in various activities of CSI.

The capacity management process must be responsive to changing requirements for processing capacity. New services are required to underpin the changingbusiness. Existing services will require modification to provide extra functionality. Old services will become obsolete, freeing up capacity. Capacity management must ensure sufficient hardware, software and personnel resources are in place to support existing and future business capacity and performance requirements.

Similarly to availability management, capacity management can play an important role in helping the IT support organization recognize where it can add value by exploiting its technical skills and competencies in a capacity context. The continual improvement technique can be used by capacity management to harness this technicalcapability. This can be used with either small groups of technical staff or a wider group within a workshop environment.

The information provided by capacity management is made available to CSI through the capacity management information system (CMIS).

5.8.3 Business capacity management

A prime objective of the business capacity management sub-process is to ensure that future business requirements for IT services are considered and understood, and that sufficient capacity to support the services is planned and implemented in an appropriate timescale.

As a result, the ability to satisfy the customers' SLRs will be affected. It is the responsibility of capacity management to predict and cater to these changes. These new requirements may come to the attention of capacity management from many different sources and for many different reasons. They may be generated by the business or may originate from the capacity management process itself. Such examples could be a recommendation to upgrade to take advantage of new technology, or the implementation of a tuning activity to resolve a performance problem.

Information gathered here enables CSI to answer the question 'What do we need?'

5.8.4 Service capacity management

A prime objective of the service capacity management sub-process is to identify and understand the IT services, their use of resource, working patterns, peaks and troughs, as well as to ensure that the services can and do meet their SLA targets. In this sub-process, the focus is on managing service performance, as determined by the targets contained in the SLAs or SLRs.

The key to successful service capacity management is to pre-empt difficulties, wherever possible. This is another sub-process that has to be proactive and anticipatory rather than reactive. However, there are times when it has to react to specific performance problems. Based on the knowledge and understanding of the performance requirements for each service, the effects of changes in the use of services can be estimated, and actions taken to ensure that the required service performance can be achieved. Information gathered here enables CSI to answer the question 'What do we need?'

5.8.5 Component capacity management

A prime objective of the component capacity management sub-process is to identify and understand the capacity and utilization of each of the components of the IT infrastructure. This ensures the optimum use of the current hardware and software resources in order to achieve and maintain the agreed service levels. All hardwarecomponents and many software components in the IT infrastructure have a finite capacity, which, when exceeded, have the potential to cause performance problems.

As in service capacity management, the key to successful component capacity management is to pre-empt difficulties wherever possible. Therefore this sub-process has to be proactive and anticipatory rather than reactive. However, there are times when it has to react to specific problems that are caused by a lack or inefficient use of resources.

It is important to understand how the three sub-processes tie together. Let's look at the example in Figure 5.14.

There are three services: A, B and C; and three departments: Marketing, Sales and Finance. Service A is used by all three departments. Service B is used only by Marketing and Sales. Service C is used only by Finance.

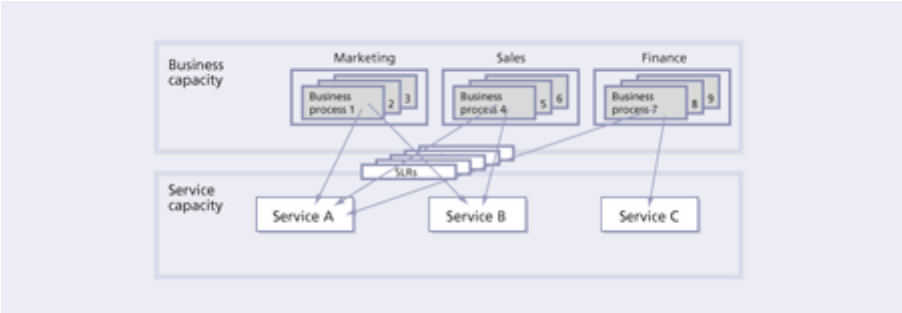


Figure 5.14 Connecting business and service capacity management

The requirements for each service from each department are shown in Table 5.15.

Table 5.15 Departmental requirements

	Marketing	Sales	Finance
Employees	15	40	5
Number of emails per day	100	200	50
Size of attachment	10 Mb	5 Mb	10 Mb
Frequency of large attachment	infrequent	very (contracts)	often

Requires remote access	No	Yes	Yes
Requires hand-held computer	No	Yes	No

From Table 5.15, the overall size of the email service can be computed. If email was the only service, it would be relatively simple. There are other services offered and each service makes use of four major components: hardware, software, documentation and people. Using the CFIA report from availability management it is possible to identify all the components of each service and which component is used by which service. From there optimizing the capacity of each component can be reviewed. This, in turn, enables the optimization of the service based on the usage and performance requirements from each customer.

This, however, only focuses on the current utilization. Future business requirements for this service also need to be reviewed. Growth can happen in one of three ways as shown in Figure 5.15. In this figure, curve 1 indicates a steady growth or deployment of the service over time; curve 2 indicates a big-bang approach where everyone starts using the new service at the same time and usage stabilizes over time; and curve 3 indicates a small number of people using the new service before it is eventually deployed to everyone.

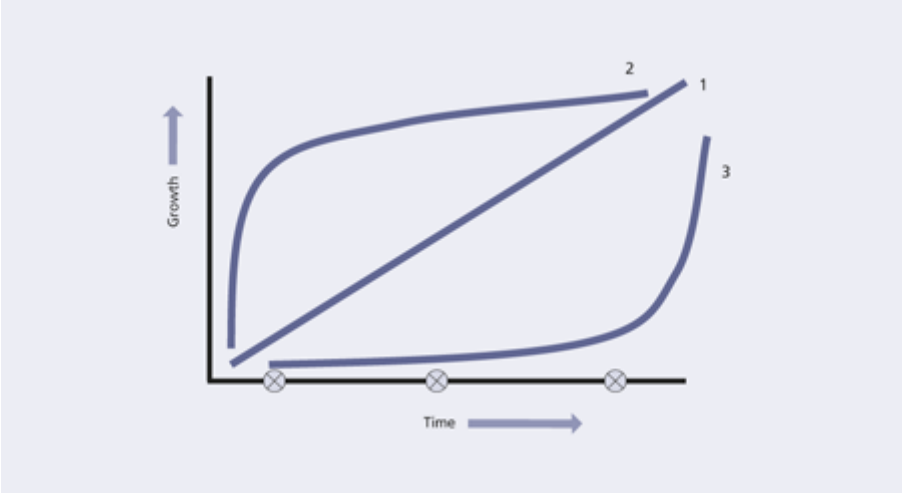


Figure 5.15 Business capacity growth model.

You can predict which growth curve is correct as accurately as you can predict the weather a year from now. Looking at curve 2, it is important to ensure sufficient initialcapacity for all components – hardware, software, documentation and people. Looking at curve 1 additional capacity is required but can wait if curve 3 is considered. Now what would happen if the business scenario predicts curve 2 and curve 3 is what actually happens? The result is over-capacity and IT is blamed for poor planning and for overspending. Consider the opposite scenario where the business predicts curve 3 and curve 2 is what actually happens. The result is under-capacity and IT gets blamed for poor planning.

Remember that only one service was reviewed so far. There are three services in the example. You need to understand the service and business along with the component capacity requirements to be able to identify the true capacity requirements. More importantly business capacity can be computed since how much a business unit consumes a service is known. This is when the infrastructure required to deliver and support the services can be properly put in place (see Figures 5.16 and 5.17).

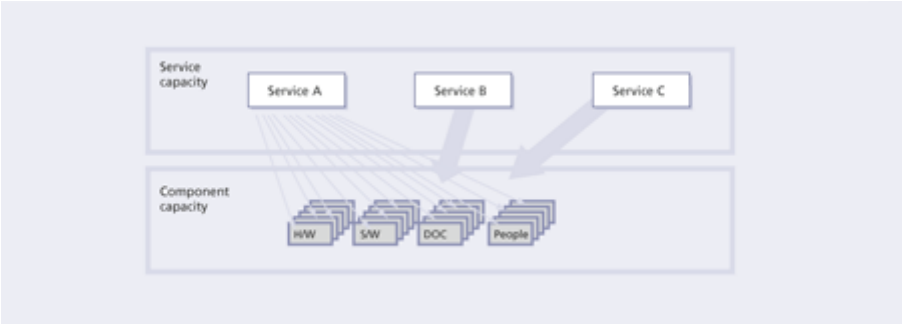


Figure 5.16 Connecting service and component capacity management

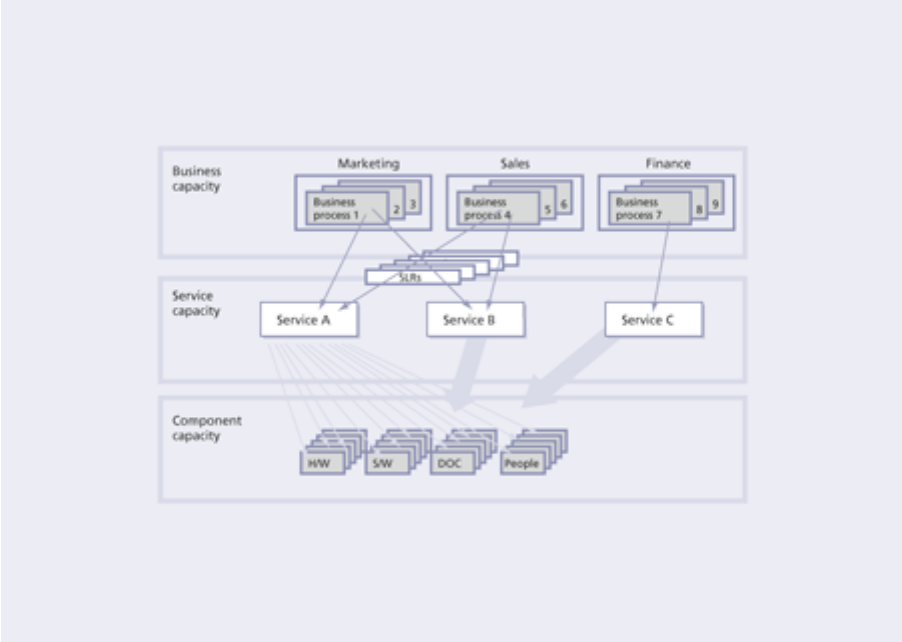


Figure 5.17 Connecting businesses, service and component capacity management

From this point, IT is in a better position to improve the service provision. In order to do this IT must start not only to measure but also to influence the business. Influencing the business is part of demand management.

5.8.6 Workload management and demand management

Workload management can be defined as understanding which customers use what service, when they use the service, how they use the service, and finally how using the service impacts the performance of a single or multiple systems and/or components that make up a service.

Demand management is often associated with influencing the end users' behaviour. By influencing the end users' behaviour an organization can change the workload thus improving the performance of components that support IT services. Using demand management can be an effective way of improving services without investing a lot of money. A full discussion of demand management can be found in *ITIL Service Strategy* and *ITIL Service Design*.

There are different ways to influence customer behaviour. Charging for services is an obvious way, but it is not always effective. Sometimes people still need to use the service and will use it regardless of the price. Putting in place policies regarding proper usage of the service is another way to influence customer behaviour; communicating expectations for IT and the business, educating people on how to use the service and negotiating maintenance windows are just as effective in influencing customers. Putting in place restrictions such as amount of space allocated for email storage is another way to influence behaviour.

Consider carefully how you try to influence a customer's behaviour and it may become a negative influence rather than a positive influence. As an example, if an organization chooses to charge for every contact to the service desk, this could create a negative behaviour in that end users no longer call or email the service desk, but call second-level support directly, or turn to peer-to-peer support, which ultimately makes the cost of support go up, not down. However if the goal is to move end users to using a new self-service web-based knowledge system, then with a proper communication and education plan on using the new self-service system this could be a positive influencing experience.

CSI needs to review demand management policies to ensure that they are still effective. A policy that was good a couple of years ago may not be workable or useful today. For example, a few years ago, large email attachments were uncommon. It made sense to limit attachments to 2 Mb. Today's reality is different.

5.8.7 Iterative activities of capacity management

5.8.7.1 Trend analysis

Trend analysis can be performed on the resource utilization and service performance information that was collected by the service and component capacity managementsub-processes. The data can be held in a spreadsheet and the graphical, trend analysis and forecasting facilities used to show the utilization of a particular resource over a previous period of time, and how it can be expected to change in the future. Typically trend analysis only provides estimates of future resource utilization. It is less effective in producing an accurate estimate of response times, in which case either analytical or simulation modelling should be used.

This activity provides insight into resource utilization and is used by both CSI and problem management to identify opportunities for improvements. Trend analysis is rooted in the data analysis activity of the measuring process.

It is important to recognize that trend analysis is also an activity of proactive problem management (see section 4.4 in *ITIL Service Operation*). However, the focus is different. Whereas problem management focuses on trends in errors and faults (the past), capacity management is forward looking. It might be

looking for innovation instorage management, or at expected growth versus real growth and recommend adjustments.

5.8.7.2 Modelling

Modelling types range from making estimates based on experience and current resource utilization information, to pilot studies, prototypes and full-scale benchmarks. The former are cheaper and more reasonable for day-to-day small decisions, while the latter are expensive but may be advisable when implementing a large new project.

Since it is impossible to have an exact duplicate of the infrastructure for testing purposes, CSI makes use of the information provided by the capacity management modelling activity to predict the behaviour of service improvements before the improvement is actually carried out. This may prevent costly implementations or problems later. Modelling results can be used by change management to assess the impact of a change on the infrastructure or may be used as part of release testing. Whether it is used by another process before the information makes its way to CSI, modelling is a valuable tool.

Modelling can also be used in conjunction with demand management to predict the possible effects of demand management efforts and initiatives. This allows IT to answer questions such as 'What happens if we fail?' and 'What happens if we are successful?'

5.8.7.3 Analytical modelling

Analytical models are representations of computer system's behaviour using mathematical techniques such as multi-class network queuing theory. When the model is run, the queuing theory is used to calculate computer system response times. If the response times predicted by the model are sufficiently close to the response times recorded in real life, the model can be regarded as an accurate representation of the computer system. The technique of analytical modelling requires less time and effort than simulation modelling, but typically gives less accurate results. Also the model must be kept up to date.

5.8.7.4 Simulation modelling

Simulation involves the modelling of discrete events, such as transaction arrival rates, against a given hardware configuration. This type of modelling can be very accurate in sizing new applications or predicting the effects of changes on existing applications. It can also be very time-consuming and therefore costly.

When simulating transaction arrival rates, have a number of staff enter a series of transactions from prepared scripts, or use software to input the same scripted transactions with a random arrival rate. Either of these approaches takes time and effort to prepare and run. However it can be cost-justified for organizations with very large systems where the cost, and associated performance implications, assume great importance.

5.8.7.5 Baseline models

Improvements are gradual and incremental by nature. How can one claim to have improved if a baseline is not established before the improvement takes place?

The first stage in modelling is to create a baseline model that accurately reflects the performance that is being achieved. When this baseline model is created, predictive modelling can be undertaken. If the baseline model is accurate, then the accuracy of the result of the predicted changes can be trusted.

Effective service and component capacity management together with modelling techniques enable capacity management to answer the 'What if?' questions: 'What if thethroughput of service A doubles?' or 'What if service B is moved from the current processor onto a new processor – how will the response times in the two services be altered?'

Figure 5.18 Capacity management activities

Figure 5.18 illustrates how CSI can make use of the intricate relationships between capacity management and other processes and activities. At first glance the diagram seems very busy. However, it illustrates the inputs and outputs from other processes and activities into and out of the various sub-activities of capacity management. CSI will then use this information to assist capacity management in planning for future capacity and performance as well as identifying improvement opportunities.

5.8.8 IT service continuity management

This section provides practical usage and details about how each ITSCM method can be used in various activities of CSI.

5.8.8.1 Business continuity management, ITSCM and CSI

Any CSI initiative to improve services needs to also have integration with ITSCM as any changes to the service requirements, infrastructure etc. need to be taken into account for any changes that may be required for the continuity plan. That is why it is important for all SIPs to go through change management.

Business continuity management (BCM) is concerned with managing risks to ensure that an organization can continue operating to a predetermined minimum level. The BCM process involves reducing the risk to an acceptable level and planning for the recovery of business processes should a risk materialize and a disruption to thebusiness occur.

ITSCM allows an IT organization to identify, assess and take responsibility for managing its risks, thus enabling it to better understand the environment in which it operates, decide which risks it wishes to counteract, and act positively to protect the interests of all stakeholders (including staff, customers, shareholders, third parties and creditors). CSI can complement this activity and help to deliver business benefit.

5.8.9 Problem management

CSI and problem management are closely related as one of the goals of problem management is to identify and remove errors permanently that impact services from the infrastructure. This directly supports CSI activities of identifying and implementing service improvements.

Problem management also supports CSI activities through trend analysis and the targeting of preventive action.

Problem management activities are generally conducted within the scope of service operation and CSI must take an active role in the proactive aspects of problem management to identify and recommend changes that will result in service improvements.

Further information on the problem management process can be found in *ITIL Service Operation*.

5.8.10 Change management, release and deployment management

It is likely that all CSI improvement activities will fall under the scope of change management and release and deployment management. CSI's goal is to identify and implement improvement activities on IT services that support the business processes as well as to identify and implement improvements to ITSM processes. The improvement activities support the lifecycle approach through service strategy, service design, service transition and service operation.

CSI is an ongoing activity constantly monitoring, analysing and researching improvement opportunities, whereas release and deployment management depends on the change management process for its work.

There are many activities of the release and deployment management process that can be utilized by CSI. Once CSI has come up with a recommendation for improvement, a change request is submitted. The proposed change is then scheduled as part of a release. The release and deployment management

process will identify any areas requiring improvement for new or updated services during the early life support phase.

5.8.10.1 Post-implementation review

As a part of change management a post-implementation review (PIR) is carried out on certain changes. CSI, working with change management, can require a PIR for all changes that CSI was a part of for improving a service (see *ITIL Service Transition*). CSI needs to participate in any PIR on changes that are implemented to improve a service. As part of a PIR it is important for CSI to identify if the change actually improved the service or if there are still some issues. If a change, once implemented, fails to improve the service as desired, then CSI activities need to continue working with service design, service transition and service operation.

5.8.11 Knowledge management

One of the key domains in support of CSI is knowledge management. Capturing, organizing, assessing for quality and using knowledge is great input in CSI activities. Anorganization has to gather knowledge and analyse what the results are in order to look for trends in service level achievements and/or results and output of service management processes. This knowledge is used to identify improvement opportunities for inclusion in the CSI register, for subsequent review and prioritization of the register, and for building SIPs.

Knowledge management in today's market is vastly different from what it was 10 years ago. Just in that short amount of time there has been:

- An increase in the rate of change in industry and market landscapes, as barriers to entry have decreased and new opportunities opened up
- An increase in employee turnover, as it has become more socially acceptable and often beneficial to change companies during a career to develop and share new experiences and perspectives
- An increase in access to information via the internet and a more open global economy
- Greater market competition forcing company employees to share knowledge between departments and subsidiaries.

5.8.11.1 Knowledge management concepts

Effective knowledge management enables a company to optimize the benefits of these changes, while at the same time:

- Enhancing the organization's effectiveness through better decision-making enabled by having the right information at the right time, and facilitating enterprise learning through the exchange and development of ideas and individuals
- Enhancing customer–supplier relationships through sharing information and services to expand capabilities through collaborative efforts
- Improving business processes through sharing lessons learned, results and best practices across the organization.

Knowledge management is key to the overall viability of the enterprise, from capturing the competitive advantage in an industry to decreasing cycle time and cost of an IT implementation. The approach to cultivating knowledge depends heavily on the make-up of the existing knowledge base, and knowledge management norms for cultural interaction.

There are two main components to successful knowledge management:

- An **open culture** where knowledge – best practices and lessons learned – is shared across the organization and individuals are rewarded for it. Many cultures foster an environment where 'knowledge is power' (the more you know that others do not, the more valuable you are to the company). This type of knowledge hoarding is a dangerous behaviour for a company to reward since that knowledge may leave the company at any time. Another tenet of an open culture is a willingness to learn. This is an environment where growing an individual's knowledge base is rewarded and facilitated through open support and opportunities.
- The **infrastructure** – a culture may be open to knowledge sharing, but without the means or infrastructure to support it, even the best intentions can be impaired, and over time this serves as a demotivator, quelling the behaviour. This infrastructure can be defined in various ways; it may be a technical application or system which allows individuals to conduct online, self-paced training, or it may be processes such as post-mortems or knowledge sharing activities designed to bring people together to discuss best practices or lessons learned.

The identification of knowledge gaps and resulting sharing and development of that knowledge must be built into CSI throughout the IT lifecycle. This also raises the issues of dependencies and priorities. The IT lifecycle itself drives a natural priority of knowledge development and sharing. But regardless of the IT project's lifecycle stage, it is important to identify and develop the necessary knowledge base prior to the moment where the knowledge may be applied. This may seem obvious and yet the majority of organizations fail to recognize the need to train individuals until the process is halted due to a skills shortage. Knowledge sharing is an activity that should be fostered prior to, during and after the application of knowledge to the task.

Knowledge management could be seen at the opposite end of a spectrum from fully automated processes that have all the required knowledge built into the process itself. Service management processes fall somewhere between these two extremes, with the operational processes nearer to the automation of processes than thetactical or strategic processes. This should be taken into account when designing the ITSM processes. Knowledge management may very well enable quick wins on the more knowledge management intensive processes. This is not to imply that there would be a difference of levels of knowledge required for the people participating to the processes – rather that, in order to further develop SLM and vendor-management processes, the tactical knowledge needs to be harvested. It is easier to automate the operational level processes than the tactical or strategic processes, which require a greater breadth and depth of knowledge.

Throughout a CSI initiative, a lot of experience and information is acquired. It is important that this knowledge be gathered, organized and accessible. To ensure the ongoing success of the programme, knowledge management techniques must be applied.

All this knowledge comes from the service knowledge management system (SKMS) (see Figure 5.19). *ITIL Service Transition* explains the principles and structure of the SKMS.

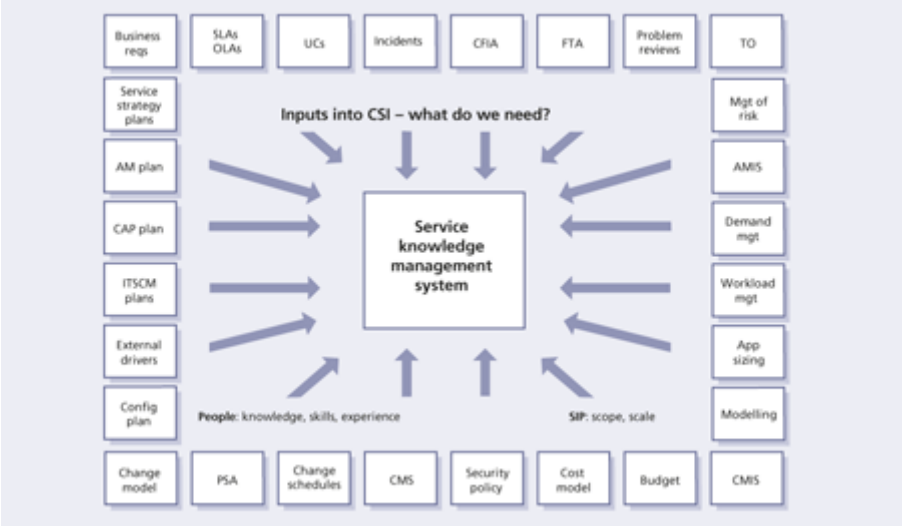


Figure 5.19 Sources of knowledge

5.8.12 Risk management

Although not an ITIL-defined ITSM process, risk management is part of many processes such as change management, ITSCM, availability management, information security management and strategic risk management. Risks to all elements of warranty and utility need to be assessed and mitigated where possible. While risk management is primarily conducted during design and transition stages of the service lifecycle, a good CSI initiative will assess the results of risk management activities to identify service improvements through risk mitigation, elimination and management.

Every organization manages its risk, but not always in a way that is visible, repeatable and consistently applied to support decision-making. The task of risk management is to ensure that the organization makes cost-effective use of a risk process that has a series of well-defined steps. The aim is to support better decision-making through a good understanding of risks and their likely impact.

There are two distinct phases: risk assessment and risk management. Risk assessment is concerned with gathering information about exposure to risk so that the organization can make appropriate decisions and manage risk appropriately. Risk assessment involves the identification and assessment of the level (measure) of the risks calculated from the assessed values of assets and the assessed levels of threats to, and vulnerabilities of, those assets.

Risk management involves having processes in place to monitor risks, access to reliable and up-to-date information about risks, the right balance of control in place to deal with those risks, and decision-making processes supported by a framework of risk assessment and evaluation. Risk management also involves the identification, selection and adoption of countermeasures justified by the identified risks to assets when considering their potential impact on services if failure occurs, and the reduction of those risks to an acceptable level.

Risk management covers a wide range of topics, including BCM, security, programme/project risk management and operational service management. These topics need to be placed in the context of an organizational framework for the management of risk. Some risk-related topics, such as security, are highly specialized and this guidance provides only an overview of such aspects.

A certain amount of risk taking is inevitable if an organization is to achieve its objectives. Effective management of risk helps to improve performance by contributing to:

- Increased certainty and fewer surprises
- Better service delivery
- More effective management of change
- More efficient use of resources
- Better management at all levels through improved decision-making
- Reduced waste and fraud, and better value for money
- Innovation
- Management of contingent and maintenance activities.

5.8.12.1 Relating management of risk to safety, security and business continuity

Management of risk should be carried out in the wider context of safety concerns, security and business continuity:

- **Health and safety** policy and practice is concerned with ensuring that the workplace is a safe environment.
- **Security** is concerned with protecting the organization's assets, including information, buildings and so on.
- **Business continuity** is concerned with ensuring that the organization could continue to operate in the event of a disaster, such as loss of a service, flood or fire damage.

Figure 5.20 illustrates the reasons for having a risk management process.

Figure 5.20 Reasons for a risk management process

5.8.12.2 Business perspective on risk management

Risk management from the business perspective, in the context of working with suppliers, centres on assessing vulnerabilities in supplier arrangements that posethreats to any aspect of the business including:

- Customer satisfaction
- Brand image
- Market share
- Share price
- Profitability
- Regulatory impacts or penalties (in some industries).

The nature of the relationship affects the degree of risk to the business.

Risks associated with an outsourced supplier are likely to be greater in number, and more complex to manage, than those associated with an internal supplier. It is rarely possible to outsource risk. Blaming a supplier does not impress customers or internal users affected by a security incident or a lengthy system failure. New risks arising from the relationship need to be identified and managed, with communication and escalation as appropriate.

A substantial risk assessment should have been undertaken pre-contract, but this needs to be maintained in the light of changing business needs, changes to the contract scope or changes in the operational environment.

5.8.12.3 Risk profiles and responsibilities

The organization and the supplier must consider the threats posed by the relationship to their own assets, and have their own risk profile. Each must identify their respective risk owners. In a well-functioning relationship it is possible for much or all of the assessment to be openly shared with the other party. By involving supplier experts in risk assessments, the organization may gain valuable insights into how best to mitigate risks, as well as improving the coverage of the assessment.

Risk assessments typically consider threats which may exploit vulnerabilities to impact the confidentiality, integrity or availability of one or more assets.

The scope of risk assessments includes:

- Identification of risks (threats and vulnerabilities)
- Target – the assets under threat
- Impact of risks, qualitative and quantitative
- Probability of occurrence
- Possible mitigating actions or controls

- Identification of stakeholders who are accountable for the risk, and responsible for selecting an appropriate action (including possibly accepting the risk with nocontrol)
- Responsibility for implementing selected actions or controls
- Choice of actions or controls, based on an evaluation of impact versus the cost of action or control.

For outsourced operations, particular care needs to be taken when considering the ownership of the assets at risk. These will be different for each party.

Risk management processes need to be considered as cyclical, reviewing the suitability of previous actions, and reassessing risks in the light of changing circumstances. Risks are likely to be managed through a risk register such as the example provided in Table 5.16.

Table 5.16 Risk register

Reference	Description	Weighted priority			Proposed actio costs
		Prob. HML	Impact HML	Prob. × impact = Exposure	
R1		H	H	9	
R2		H	M	6	
R3		M	L	3	
R4		L	L	1	

For further information on risk management, consult Appendix C.

5.9 Summary

Many methods and techniques are used to support CSI activities. Each organization can choose what works best for them. However, you should never adopt only one as it takes a blend of different methods to have an effective CSI initiative.

CSI relies on the activities of all other service management processes. Don't overlook the value incident management, problem management, availability management and capacity management can provide to CSI. Of course SLM plays a key role and most organizations will be hard pressed to have an effective CSI initiative without some form of SLM in place.

6 Organizing for continual service improvement

6.1 Organizational development
6.2 Functions
6.3 Roles

6.4 Customer engagement
6.5 Responsibility model – RACI
6.6 Competence and training

This chapter describes organizing for service management in relation to continual service improvement (CSI) and the related practices. It includes generic roles, responsibilities and competencies that apply across the service lifecycle and specific aspects for the processes described in this publication.

Section 2.2.3 describes the basic concepts of organization, function, group, team, department, division and role that are used in this chapter.

All stages of the lifecycle will be looking for opportunities to improve and most roles could be involved in CSI. It is a responsibility of all elements and processes within the lifecycle to look for opportunities to improve quality, to be more cost-effective and to enable the business overall to be more successful by better alignment. Therefore organizing for improvement is not restricted to one lifecycle stage or process but is the responsibility of everyone and to some extent all roles.

6.1 Organizational development

There is no single best way to organize, and best practices described in ITIL need to be tailored to suit individual organizations and situations. Any changes made will need to take into account resource constraints and the size, nature and needs of the business and customers. The starting point for organizational design is strategy. Organization development for service management is described in more detail in Chapter 6 of *ITIL Service Strategy*.

6.2 Functions

A function is a team or group of people and the tools or other resources they use to carry out one or more processes or activities. In larger organizations, a function may be broken out and performed by several departments, teams and groups, or it may be embodied within a single organizational unit (e.g. service desk). In smaller organizations, one person or group can perform multiple functions – e.g. a technical management department could also incorporate the service desk function.

For CSI to be successful, an organization will need to define clearly the roles and responsibilities required to undertake the processes and activities identified in Chapters 4 and 5. These roles will need to be assigned to individuals, and an appropriate organization structure of teams, groups or functions established and managed.

ITIL Continual Service Improvement does not define any functions of its own, but it does rely on the technical and application management functions described in *ITIL Service Operation*. Technical and application management provide the technical resources and expertise to manage the whole service lifecycle, and practitioner roles within CSI may be performed by members of these functions.

6.3 Roles

A number of roles need to be performed in support of CSI. Please note that this section provides guidelines and examples of role descriptions. These are not exhaustive or prescriptive, and in

many cases roles will need to be combined or separated. Organizations should take care to apply this guidance in a way that suits their own structures and objectives.

A role is a set of responsibilities, activities and authorities granted to a person or team. A role is defined in a process or function. One person or team may have multiple roles; for example, the roles of configuration manager and change manager may be carried out by a single person.

Roles are often confused with job titles, but it is important to realize that they are not the same. Each organization will define appropriate job titles and job descriptions that suit its needs, and individuals holding these job titles can perform one or more of the required roles.

It should also be recognized that a person may, as part of their job assignment, perform a single task that represents participation in more than one process. For example, a technical analyst who submits a request for change (RFC) to add memory to a server to resolve a performance problem is participating in activities of thechange management process at the same time as taking part in activities of the capacity management and problem management processes.

Roles fall into two main categories – generic roles such as process manager and process owner, and specific roles that are involved within a particular lifecycle stage or process such as a change administrator or service desk staff. Roles can be combined in a number of different ways, depending on the organizational context. For example, in many organizations there will be someone with the job title of change manager who combines the roles of the change management process owner, change management process manager, change administrator and chair of a change advisory board (CAB). In a small organization the change manager role may be combined with roles from service asset and configuration management or release and deployment management. In larger organizations there may be many different people carrying out each of these roles, split by geography, technology or other criteria. The exceptions to this are that there must be only one process owner for each process and one service owner for each service.

Roles are accountable or responsible for an activity. They may also be consulted or informed about something: for example a service owner may be consulted about a change during an impact assessment activity. The RACI model, described in section 6.5, provides a useful way of defining and communicating roles and responsibilities.

What is a service manager?

Service manager is a generic term for any manager within the service provider. The term is commonly used to refer to a business relationship manager, a process manager or a senior manager with responsibility for IT services overall. A service manager is often assigned several roles such as business relationship management, service level management (SLM) and CSI.

6.3.1 Generic service owner role

To ensure that a service is managed with a business focus, the definition of a single point of accountability is absolutely essential to provide the level of attention and focus required for its delivery.

The service owner is accountable for the delivery of a specific IT service. The service owner is responsible to the customer for the initiation, transition and ongoing maintenance and support of a particular service and accountable to the IT director or service management director for the delivery of

the service. The service owner's accountability for a specific service within an organization is independent of where the underpinning technology components, processes or professional capabilities reside.

Service ownership is as critical to service management as establishing ownership for processes which cross multiple vertical silos or departments. It is possible that a single person may fulfil the service owner role for more than one service.

The service owner has the following responsibilities:

- Ensuring that the ongoing service delivery and support meet agreed customer requirements
- Working with business relationship management to understand and translate customer requirements into activities, measures or service components that will ensure that the service provider can meet those requirements
- Ensuring consistent and appropriate communication with customer(s) for service-related enquiries and issues
- Assisting in defining service models and in assessing the impact of new services or changes to existing services through the service portfolio management process
- Identifying opportunities for service improvements, discussing these with the customer and raising RFCs as appropriate
- Liaising with the appropriate process owners throughout the service lifecycle
- Soliciting required data, statistics and reports for analysis and to facilitate effective service monitoring and performance
- Providing input in service attributes such as performance, availability etc.
- Representing the service across the organization
- Understanding the service (components etc.)
- Serving as the point of escalation (notification) for major incidents relating to the service
- Representing the service in change advisory board (CAB) meetings
- Participating in internal service review meetings (within IT)
- Participating in external service review meetings (with the business)
- Ensuring that the service entry in the service catalogue is accurate and is maintained
- Participating in negotiating service level agreements (SLAs) and operational level agreements (OLAs) relating to the service
- Identifying improvement opportunities for inclusion in the CSI register
- Working with the CSI manager to review and prioritize improvements in the CSI register
- Making improvements to the service.

The service owner is responsible for continual improvement and the management of change affecting the service under their care. The service owner is a primarystakeholder in all of the underlying IT processes which enable or support the service they own. For example:

- **Incident management** Is involved in (or perhaps chairs) the crisis management team for high-priority incidents impacting the service owned
- **Problem management** Plays a major role in establishing the root cause and proposed permanent fix for the service being evaluated

- **Release and deployment management** Is a key stakeholder in determining whether a new release affecting a service in production is ready for promotion
- **Change management** Participates in CAB decisions, authorizing changes to the services they own
- **Service asset and configuration management** Ensures that all groups which maintain the data and relationships for the service architecture they are responsible for have done so with the level of integrity required
- **Service level management** Acts as the single point of contact for a specific service and ensures that the service portfolio and service catalogue are accurate in relation to their service
- **Availability management and capacity management** Reviews technical monitoring data from a domain perspective to ensure that the needs of the overall service are being met
- **IT service continuity management** (ITSCM) Understands and is responsible for ensuring that all elements required to restore their service are known and in place in the event of a crisis
- **Information security management** Ensures that the service conforms to information security management policies
- **Financial management for IT services** Assists in defining and tracking the cost models in relation to how their service is costed and recovered.

6.3.2 Generic process owner role

The process owner role is accountable for ensuring that a process is fit for purpose. This role is often assigned to the same person who carries out the process managerrole, but the two roles may be separate in larger organizations. The process owner role is accountable for ensuring that their process is performed according to the agreed and documented standard and meets the aims of the process definition.

The process owner's accountabilities include:

- Sponsoring, designing and change managing the process and its metrics
- Defining the process strategy
- Assisting with process design
- Ensuring that appropriate process documentation is available and current
- Defining appropriate policies and standards to be employed throughout the process
- Periodically auditing the process to ensure compliance to policy and standards
- Periodically reviewing the process strategy to ensure that it is still appropriate and change as required
- Communicating process information or changes as appropriate to ensure awareness
- Providing process resources to support activities required throughout the service lifecycle
- Ensuring that process technicians have the required knowledge and the required technical and business understanding to deliver the process, and understand their role in the process
- Reviewing opportunities for process enhancements and for improving the efficiency and effectiveness of the process
- Addressing issues with the running of the process
- Identifying improvement opportunities for inclusion in the CSI register
- Working with the CSI manager and process manager to review and prioritize improvements in the CSI register

- Making improvements to the process.

Further detail on the role and responsibilities of the process owner can be found in *ITIL Service Strategy* and *ITIL Service Design*.

6.3.3 Generic process manager role

The process manager role is accountable for operational management of a process. There may be several process managers for one process, for example regional change managers or IT service continuity managers for each data centre. The process manager role is often assigned to the person who carries out the process owner role, but the two roles may be separate in larger organizations.

The process manager's accountabilities include:

- Working with the process owner to plan and coordinate all process activities
- Ensuring all activities are carried out as required throughout the service lifecycle
- Appointing people to the required roles
- Managing resources assigned to the process
- Working with service owners and other process managers to ensure the smooth running of services
- Monitoring and reporting on process performance
- Identifying improvement opportunities for inclusion in the CSI register
- Working with the CSI manager and process owner to review and prioritize improvements in the CSI register
- Making improvements to the process implementation.

6.3.4 Generic process practitioner role

A process practitioner is responsible for carrying out one or more process activities.

In some organizations, and for some processes, the process practitioner role may be combined with the process manager role, in others there may be large numbers of practitioners carrying out different parts of the process.

The process practitioner's responsibilities typically include:

- Carrying out one or more activities of a process
- Understanding how their role contributes to the overall delivery of service and creation of value for the business
- Working with other stakeholders, such as their manager, co-workers, users and customers, to ensure that their contributions are effective
- Ensuring that inputs, outputs and interfaces for their activities are correct
- Creating or updating records to show that activities have been carried out correctly.

6.3.5 CSI manager

The role of CSI manager is essential for a successful improvement programme. The CSI manager is ultimately responsible for the success of all improvement activities. This single point of accountability

coupled with competence and authority improves the chances of a successful improvement programme. The role of CSI manager can also fulfil the role of the seven-step improvement process owner/manager.

The CSI manager's responsibilities typically include:

- Developing the CSI domain
- Communicating the vision of CSI across the IT organization
- Ensuring that CSI roles have been filled
- Designing the CSI register and associated activities
- Working with service owners, service level managers, the seven-step improvement manager, other process managers and functions to identify and manage improvement opportunities:
- Identifying improvement opportunities for inclusion in the CSI register
- Reviewing and prioritizing improvements in the CSI register
- Building improvement plans and making improvements
- Working with service level managers to ensure that monitoring requirements are defined
- Ensuring that monitoring tools are in place to gather data
- Ensuring that baseline data is captured to measure improvement against it
- Defining and creating reports on CSI critical success factors (CSFs), key performance indicators (KPIs) and CSI activity metrics
- Identifying other frameworks, models and standards that will support CSI activities
- Ensuring that knowledge management is an integral part of routine operations
- Ensuring that CSI activities are coordinated throughout the service lifecycle
- Reviewing analysed data
- Presenting recommendations to senior management for improvement
- Helping prioritize improvement opportunities
- Leading, managing and delivering cross-functional and cross-divisional improvement projects
- Building effective relationships with the business and IT senior managers
- Identifying and delivering process improvements in critical business areas across manufacturing and relevant divisions
- Setting direction and providing a framework through which improvement objectives can be delivered
- Coaching, mentoring and supporting fellow service improvement professionals.

The CSI manager should possess the ability to influence positively all levels of management to ensure that service improvement activities are receiving the necessary support and are resourced sufficiently to implement solutions.

6.3.6 Seven-step improvement roles

This section describes a number of roles that need to be performed in support of the seven-step improvement process. These roles are not job titles, and eachorganization will have to define appropriate job titles and job descriptions for their needs.

6.3.6.1 Seven-step improvement process owner

The seven-step improvement process owner's responsibilities typically include:

- Carrying out the generic process owner role for the seven-step improvement process (see section 6.3.2 for more detail)
- Working with the CSI manager, service owners, process owners and functions to include appropriate elements of the seven-step improvement process throughout the service lifecycle.

6.3.6.2 Seven-step improvement process manager

The seven-step improvement process manager's responsibilities typically include:

- Carrying out the generic process manager role for the seven-step improvement process (see section 6.3.3 for more detail)
- Planning and managing support for improvement tools and processes
- Working with the CSI manager, service owners, process owners and functions to maintain the CSI register
- Coordinating interfaces between the seven-step improvement process, other processes, service managers and functions.

6.3.6.3 Reporting analyst

The reporting analyst is a key role for CSI and will often work in concert with SLM. The reporting analyst reviews and analyses data from components, systems and sub-systems in order to obtain a true end-to-end service achievement. The reporting analyst will also identify trends and establish if they are positive or negative. This information is then used to present the data.

The reporting analyst's responsibilities typically include:

- Participating in CSI meetings and SLM meetings to ensure the validity of the reporting metrics, notification thresholds and overall solution
- Responsibility for consolidating data from multiple sources
- Responsibility for producing trends and providing feedback on the trends such as whether the trends are positive or negative, what their impact is likely to be, and if they are predictable for the future
- Responsibility for producing reports on service or system performance based on the negotiated OLAs and SLAs and improvement initiatives.

The reporting analyst's key skills and competencies typically include:

- Good understanding of statistical and analytical principles and processes
- Strong technical foundation in the reporting tool(s)
- Good communication skills
- Good technical understanding and an ability to translate technical requirements and specifications into easily understood reporting requirements.

6.3.6.4 Other roles involved in the seven-step improvement process

In addition to the specific roles and activities described above, many activities of the seven-step improvement process take place in other processes and functions throughout the service lifecycle. CSI will only be successful if the required activities are clearly identified and assigned to appropriate roles.

Figure 6.1 lists the nature of many of these activities and the skills required to perform them.

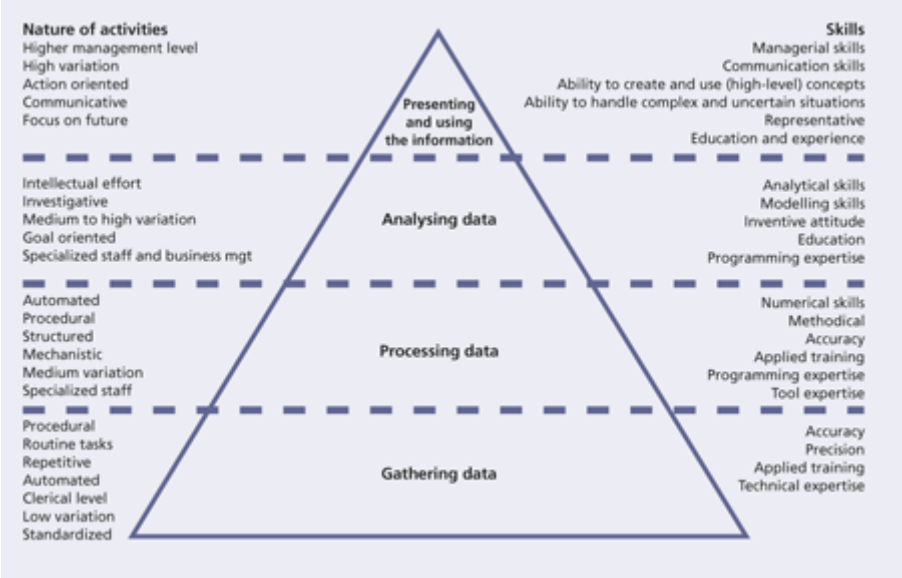


Figure 6.1 Activities and skill levels needed for continual service improvement

Note: Figure 6.1 covers steps 3 to 6 of the seven-step improvement process covered in full in Chapter 4. The following section expands on this by detailing each step in the seven-step improvement process and highlighting related activities.

Step 1 – Identify the strategy for improvement

Roles: individuals involved with strategic decision-making on the vision for the business and how IT enables that vision to succeed; individuals who will be looking at strategic, technical and operational goals.

Examples: strategy manager, service owner, service level manager, CSI manager, customers, senior business managers, business/IT analysts and senior IT managers (see Table 6.1).

Table 6.1 Skills involved in Step 1 – Identify the strategy for improvement

Nature of activities	Skills
Senior management	Ability to create a high level vi
High variation	Communication

Action-oriented	Ability to create, use high-leve
Communicative	Ability to handle complex/unce
Focused on future	Ability to set longer-term goals

Step 2 – Define what you will measure

Roles: individuals involved with decision-making from IT and the business who understand the internal and external factors that influence the necessary elements that should be measured to support the business, governance and, possibly, regulatory legislation; individuals involved with providing the service (internal and external providers) who understand the capabilities of the measuring processes, procedures, tools and staff.

Examples: service owner, service level manager, CSI manager, process owner, process managers, customers, business/IT analysts, senior IT managers, and internal and external providers (see Table 6.2).

Table 6.2 Skills involved in Step 2 – Define what you will measure

Nature of activities	Skills
Senior management	Managerial
High variation	Communication
Action-oriented	Ability to create, use (high-lev
Communicative	Ability to handle complex/unce
Intellectual effort	Analytical
Investigative	Modelling
Medium to high variation	Inventive attitude

Step 3 – Gather the data

Roles: individuals involved in day-to-day process activities within the lifecycle stages, in particular in the operational aspects of the processes where the results of many of the processes can be collected.

Examples: service desk staff, technical management staff, application management staff, IT security staff and many more (see Table 6.3).

Table 6.3 Skills involved in Step 3 – Gather the data

Nature of activities	Skills
Procedural	Accuracy
Routine	Precision
Repetitive	Meticulous nature
Automated	Technical ability
Clerical	Ability to document

Step 4 – Process the data

Roles: individuals involved in day-to-day process activities within the lifecycle stages.

Examples: service desk staff, technical management staff, application management staff and IT security staff (see Table 6.4).

Table 6.4 Skills involved in Step 4 – Process the data

Nature of activities	Skills
Automated	Numerical
Procedural	Methodical
Structural	Accuracy
Mechanistic	Meticulous nature
Medium variation	Programming skills
Specialized	Tool and technical skills and e

Step 5 – Analyse the information and data

Roles: individuals involved with providing the service (internal and external providers) who understand the capabilities of the measuring services, processes, procedures, tools and staff.

Examples: service owner, process owner, process managers, business/IT analysts, senior IT analysts, supervisors and team leaders (see Table 6.5).

Table 6.5 Skills involved in Step 5 – Analyse the information and data

Nature of activities	Skills
Intellectual	Analytical
Investigative	Modelling
Medium to high variation	Inventive attitude
Goal-oriented	Ambitious
Specialized and business management	Programming skills

Step 6 – Present and use the information

Roles: individuals involved with providing the service (internal and external providers) who understand the capabilities of the service and the underpinning processes, and possess good communication skills; key personnel involved with decision-making from IT and the business.

Examples: CSI manager, service owner, service level manager, process owner, process managers, customers, business/IT analysts, senior IT managers, internal and external providers (see Table 6.6).

Table 6.6 Skills involved in Step 6 – Present and use the information

Nature of activities	Skills
Higher management	Managerial
High variation	Communication
Action-oriented	Ability to create, use (high-lev
Communicative	Ability to handle complex/unce
Focused on future	Ambitious

Step 7 – Implement improvement

Roles: individuals involved with providing the service (internal and external providers).

Examples: CSI manager, service owner, service level manager, process owner, process managers, customers, business/IT analysts, senior IT managers, and internal and external providers (see Table 6.7).

Table 6.7 Skills involved in Step 7 – Implement improvement

Nature of activities	Skills
Intellectual effort	Analytical
Investigative	Modelling
Medium to high variation	Inventive attitude
Goal-oriented	Ambitious
Specialized staff and business management	Programming skills

6.3.7 Business relationship manager

The objective of business relationship management is to establish and maintain a good relationship between the service provider and the customer based on understanding the customer and their business drivers. The customer's business drivers could require changes in SLAs and thus become input into service improvement opportunities. Service strategy provides more detail on business relationship management and the role of business relationship managers.

Business relationship managers work closely with service level managers, service owners and the CSI manager to deliver high quality services. Their roles are compared in Table 6.8.

Table 6.8 Comparison of CSI manager, service level manager, service owner and business relationship manager roles

	CSI manager	Service level manager	Service owner	Business relationship manager
Focus				
IT services	S	P	P	P
IT systems	S		P	
Processes	P	S	S	S
Customers	S	P	S	P
Technology	P	S	P	
Responsibilities				
Developing and maintaining		P	S	P

the catalogue of existing services				
Developing and maintaining OLAs		P	S	
Gathering service level requirements (SLRs) from the customer	S	P	S	P
Negotiating and maintaining SLAs with the customer	S	P	S	S
Understanding underpinning contracts (UCs) as they relate to OLAs and SLAs	S	P	S	S
Ensuring appropriate service level monitoring is in place	P	P	S	
Producing, reviewing and evaluating reports on service performance and achievements regularly	P	P	P	P
Conducting regular meetings with the customer to discuss service level performance and improvement	S	P	S	S
Conducting yearly SLA review meetings with the customer	S	P	S	S
Ensuring customer satisfaction with the use of a customer satisfaction survey	S	P	S	P
Initiating appropriate actions to improve service levels throughservice improvement plans (SIPs)	P	P	P	P
Negotiating and agreeing OLAs and SLAs	S	P	S	S

Ensuring the management of UCs as they relate to OLAs and SLAs	S	S	S	
Working with the service level manager to provide services to meet the customer's requirements	P		P	P
Appropriate monitoring of services or systems	P	P	S	
Producing, reviewing and evaluating reports on service or systemperformance and achievement to the service level manager and the service level process manager	P	P	P	S
Assisting in appropriate actions to improve service levels (SIP)	P	P	P	P
Skills, knowledge and competencies				
Relationship management skills	P	P	P	P
A good understanding of IT services and qualifying factors in order to understand how customer requirements will affect delivery	P	P	P	P
An understanding of the customer's business and how IT contributes to the delivery of that product or service	P	P	P	P
Good communication skills	P	P	P	P
Good negotiation skills	P	P	P	P
Knowledge and experience of	S	P	S	S

contract and/or supplier management roles				
Good people management and meeting facilitating skills	P	P	P	P
Good understanding of statistical and analytical principles and processes	P	S	S	S
Good presentation skills	P	P	P	P
Good technical understanding and an ability to translate technical requirements and specifications into easily understood business concepts and vice versa	S	P	S	S
Innovative in respect of service quality and ways in which it can be improved within the bounds of the organization's limits (resource, budgetary, legal etc.)	P	P	P	P
Good organizational and planning skills	P	P	P	P
Good vendor management skills	S	S	S	S

P = primary responsibility; S = secondary responsibility; Blank = no specific responsibility

6.4 Customer engagement

A number of roles have been discussed in this chapter and they embody the concepts of a service-oriented organization. When running a more traditional IT organization focusing on technical excellence, these roles may seem extraneous, but to run a forward-thinking, service-oriented IT partner to the business, these roles are crucial. Improvement will not happen by itself. It requires a structured programme and mature processes. Those in the key roles shown in Figure 6.2 are responsible for that programme.

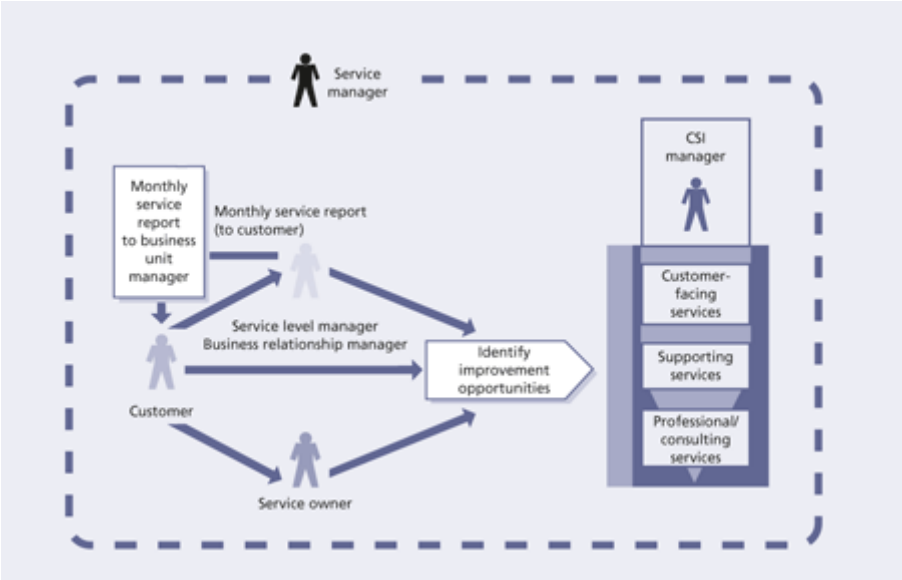


Figure 6.2 Service management roles and customer engagement

6.5 Responsibility model – RACI

Clear definitions of accountability and responsibility are essential for effective service management. To help with this task the RACI model or 'authority matrix' is often used within organizations to define the roles and responsibilities in relation to processes and activities. The RACI matrix provides a compact, concise, easy method of tracking who does what in each process and it enables decisions to be made with pace and confidence.

RACI is an acronym for the four main roles of being:

- **Responsible** The person or people responsible for correct execution – for getting the job done
- **Accountable** The person who has ownership of quality and the end result. Only one person can be accountable for each task
- **Consulted** The people who are consulted and whose opinions are sought. They have involvement through input of knowledge and information
- **Informed** The people who are kept up to date on progress. They receive information about process execution and quality.

When using RACI, there is only one person accountable for an activity for a defined scope of applicability. Several people may be responsible for executing parts of the activity. In this model, accountable means end-to-end accountability for the process. Accountability should remain with the same person for all activities of a process.

Table 6.9 An example of a simple RACI matrix

	Director service management	Service level manager	Problem manager	Security
Activity 1	AR	C	I	I

Activity 2	A	R	C	C
Activity 3	I	A	R	I
Activity 4	I	A	R	I
Activity 5	I	R	A	C

The RACI chart in Table 6.9 shows the structure and power of RACI modelling. The rows represent a number of required activities and the columns identify the people who make the decisions, carry out the activities or provide input.

Whether RACI or some other tool or model is used, the important thing is to not just leave the assignment of responsibilities to chance or leave it to the last minute to decide. For example, if there is a transfer of a service from one service provider to another, RACI models should be designed in the service design lifecycle stage, and tested and deployed in service transition. In service operation, people assigned to specific roles will perform the activities in the RACI matrix.

Further details on the RACI matrix are described in Chapter 3 of *ITIL Service Design*.

6.6 Competence and training

6.6.1 Competence and skills for service management

Delivering service successfully depends on personnel involved in service management having the appropriate education, training, skills and experience. People need to understand their role and how they contribute to the overall organization, services and processes to be effective and motivated. As changes are made, job requirements, roles, responsibilities and competencies should be updated if necessary.

Each service lifecycle stage depends on appropriate skills and experience of people and their knowledge to make key decisions. In many organizations, personnel will deliver tasks appropriate to more than one lifecycle stage. They may well find themselves allocated (fully or partially) from operational tasks to support a design exercise and then follow that service through service transition. They may then, via early life support activities, move into support of the new or changed services that they have been involved in designing and implementing into the live environment.

The specific roles within ITIL service management all require specific skills, attributes and competences from the people involved to enable them to work effectively and efficiently. However, whatever the role, it is imperative that the person carrying out that role has the following attributes:

- Awareness of the business priorities, objectives and business drivers
- Awareness of the role IT plays in enabling the business objectives to be met
- Customer service skills
- Awareness of what IT can deliver to the business, including latest capabilities
- The competence, knowledge and information necessary to complete their role
- The ability to use, understand and interpret the best practice, policies and procedures to ensure adherence.

The following are examples of attributes required in many of the roles, dependent on the organization and the specific roles assigned:

- Management skills – both from a person management perspective and from the overall control of process
- Ability to handle meetings – organizing, chairing and documenting meetings and ensuring that actions are followed up
- Communication skills – an important element of all roles is raising awareness of the processes in place to ensure buy-in and conformance. An ability to communicate at all levels within the organization will be imperative
- Articulateness – both written (e.g. for reports) and verbal
- Negotiation skills – required for several aspects, such as procurement and contracts
- An analytical mind – to analyse metrics produced from the activity.

Many people working in service management are involved with continual service improvement. *ITIL Continual Service Improvement* provides specific guidance on the skill levels needed for CSI activities.

6.6.2 Competence and skills framework

Standardizing job titles, functions, roles and responsibilities can simplify service management and human resource management. Many service providers use a common framework of reference for competence and skills to support activities such as skill audits, planning future skill requirements, organizational development programmes and resource allocation. For example, resource and cost models are simpler and easier to use if jobs and roles are standard.

The Skills Framework for the Information Age (SFIA) is an example of a common reference model for the identification of the skills needed to develop effective IT services,information systems and technology. SFIA defines seven generic levels at which tasks can be performed with the associated professional skills required for each level. A second dimension defines core competencies that can be combined with the professional skills. SFIA is used by many IT service providers to identify career development opportunities.

More information on SFIA can be found at www.sfia.org.uk

6.6.3 Training

Training in service management helps service providers to build and maintain their service management capability. Training needs must be matched to the requirements for competence and professional development.

The official ITIL qualification scheme enables organizations to develop the competence of their personnel through approved training courses. The courses help students to gain knowledge of ITIL best practices, develop their competencies and gain a recognized qualification. The scheme has four levels:

- Foundation level
- Intermediate level
- ITIL Expert

- ITIL Master.

More information on ITIL qualifications can be found at www.itil-officialsite.com

7 Technology considerations

7.1 Tools to support CSI activities

7.2 Summary

Continual service improvement (CSI) activities require software tools to support the monitoring and reporting on IT services and to underpin the IT service management(ITSM) processes. These tools are used for data gathering, monitoring and analysis reporting for services, and also assist in determining the efficiency and effectivenessof IT service management processes. The longer-term benefits to be gained are cost savings and increased productivity, which in turn can lead to an increase in thequality of the IT service provision.

From a service perspective the use of tools enables an organization to gain the ability to understand the health of its services from an end-to-end perspective. Even if an organization is not able to monitor end-to-end services it should be able to monitor, identify trends and perform analyses on the key components that make up an ITservice.

From a process perspective the use of tools enables centralization of key processes and automation and integration of core service management processes. The raw data collected in the databases can be analysed resulting in the identification of trends. Preventive measures can then be implemented thereby increasing the stability,reliability and availability of the IT infrastructure.

The ITSM software tools of today have expanded their scope from mere 'point' solutions focusing on the service desk or change management to complete, fully integrated solution suites. Current tools represent a paradigm shift into the new era of enterprise resource planning (ERP) systems for IT. For decades, IT has provided systems to run the business; now there are systems to run IT.

Many of these service management product suites are now offered in a Software as a Service (SaaS) format via cloud computing (see *ITIL Service Strategy*, section C.2), giving the advantage of full functionality without the management overheads.

7.1 Tools to support CSI activities

As part of the assessment of 'Where do we want to be?' the requirements for enhancing tools need to be addressed and documented. These requirements vary depending on the process and technology maturity. Technology specifically means systems and service management toolsets used for monitoring and controlling the systems and infrastructure components, and for managing process-based workflows, such as incident management.

Without question, service management tools are indispensable. However, good people, good process descriptions, and good procedures and working instructions are the basis for successful service management. The need for and the sophistication of the tools required depend on the business need for IT services and, to some extent, the size of the organization.

In a very small organization a simple in-house developed database system may be sufficient for logging and controlling incidents. However, in large organizations, very sophisticated distributed and integrated service management tools may be required, linking all the processes with systems management toolsets. While tools can be important assets, in today's IT-dependent organizations, they are a means, not an end in themselves. When implementing service management processes, look at the way current processes work. Each organization's unique need for management information should always be its starting point. This will help define the specifications for the tools best suited to that organization.

There are many tools that support the core ITSM processes and others that support IT governance as a whole, which will require integration with the ITSM tools. Information from both of these toolsets typically needs to be combined, collated and analysed collectively to provide the overall business intelligence required to improve effectively on the overall IT service provision.

These tools can be defined into broad categories that support and annotate different aspects of the systems and service management domains.

7.1.1 IT service management suites

The success of ITIL within the industry has encouraged software vendors to provide tools and suites of tools that are very compatible with the ITIL process framework, providing significant levels of integration between the processes and their associated record types. As mentioned earlier, many of these tools and suites of tools are offered via cloud computing. There are tools for just about every process documented in ITIL and many are beneficial to achieving the objectives of CSI. Examples includecapacity and availability monitoring and automated event identification. The functionality of all these types of tool creates a rich source of data and provides many of the inputs to CSI. Additional examples include:

- **Incidents** Incidents that capture the service or the configuration item (CI) affected are a prime input to CSI enabling an understanding of the issues affecting the overall service provision and related support activities. Incident matching functionality allows the service desk to quickly relate like issues and create master records that highlight common situations affecting the users with associated resolution data to enhance problem identification and reduce the mean time to restore service(MTRS).
- **Problems** These are defined with integrated links to the associated incidents that confirmed their existence. Using the configuration data from the configuration management system (CMS) to understand the relationships, problem management now has a source of related data to enable the root cause analysis process including change and release history of the affected CI or service.
- **Changes** These are often the first area of investigation following a service failure, again using the integration capabilities of the ITSM tool suite; it can be easier to trace the changes that have been made to a service or a CI. The change schedule and projected service outage (PSO) can be automated using calendaring capabilities to ensure visibility of changes and calculated impacts to the service level agreements (SLAs). Recent improvements in the ITSM tools now allow for automated risk assessment and prioritization of changes, highlighting potential conflicts and reducing the administrative overhead for the change advisory board.

Note: The integration of incidents, problems and changes within a single solution also provides a platform for these toolsets to introduce web-style enterprise search functionality, which will search across this semi-structured data looking for specific error codes, phrases and issues.

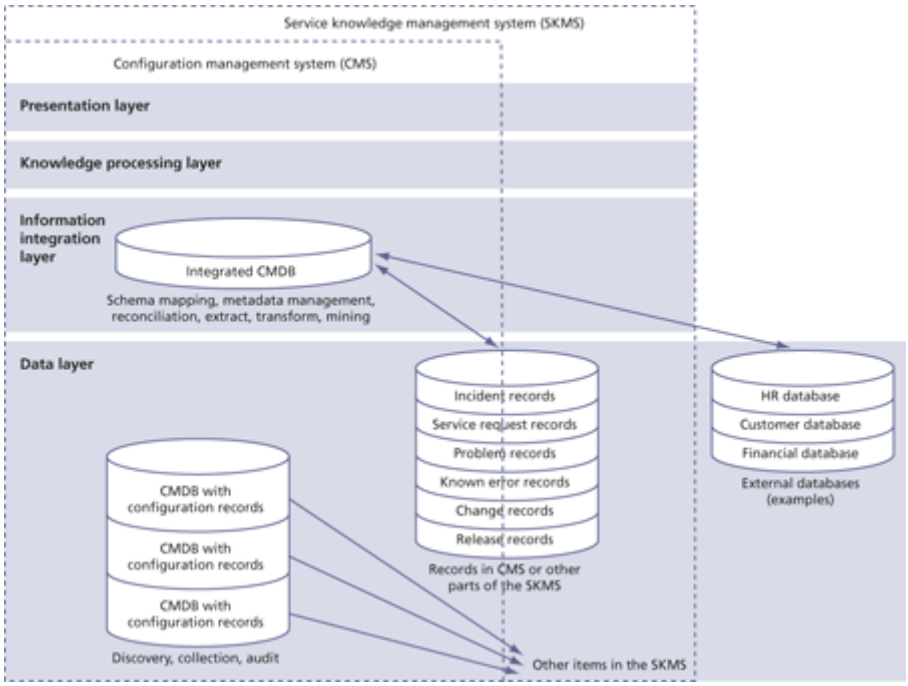


Figure 7.1 The application of the architectural layers of the CMS

7.1.1.1 Configuration data

Tool functionality in support of service asset and configuration management and the CMS has never been more advanced, with extensive discovery and servicedependency mapping capabilities. Figure 7.1 shows the layers in a CMS, starting with multiple data sources (including one or more configuration management databases) to the information integration layer to knowledge processing and finally the presentation layer. The CMS is the foundation for the integration of all ITSM tool functionality and is a critical data source for the CSI mission. While the service provider must still define the overall service asset and configuration management processand create the data model associated with their specific environment, the tools to establish and manage the CMS and the overall service delivery architecture have become very powerful. Key functionality includes: discovery and reconciliation capabilities to capture CIs within the environment; visualization of the hierarchy and CIrelationships for ease of understanding and support; audit tools to streamline the verification activities; and the ability to federate data sources where appropriate.

7.1.1.2 Releases

The ability to coordinate releases and manage the contents of these releases is also more mature, with native support for the definitive libraries and key integration points to the CMS and to specialized version control software packages. Functionality typically includes support for release records that consolidate and contain release contents, enabling the attachment of related objects and documents

pertaining to the release. Integration is normally provided to enable hyperlinking to the associatedchange records that are part of a release and the related incident, problem or service request records that were the catalyst for the original request for change (RFC). Release versions are also supported with predefined naming and numbering standards that enhance the understanding of the overall process. Overall reporting of release status and associated performance metrics are required as inputs to CSI ensuring that the deployment of new services are of the highest possible quality.

7.1.1.3 Service level management

Service level management (SLM) functionality is also well supported within the ITSM tool suites of today, enabling the linkage of incidents, problems, changes and releases to associated SLM records such as SLAs, operational level agreements (OLAs) and underpinning contracts (UCs). Most tool suites support automated SLAmonitoring (SLAM) charts highlighting which agreements are within tolerance, are threatened or have been broken. This automation is driven by the ability to define key SLA criteria and use related operational support records to trigger thresholds (e.g. a priority one incident is about to break the one-hour resolution target time or a changehas caused a longer downtime than was agreed). CMS functionality can also support the concept of prioritized CIs that underpin specific service levels, highlighting a greater impact if a failed component supports a critical service or business process. Some suites also provide the ability to trigger availability impacts to SLAs by capturing incident data related to service outages. Many of the suites also facilitate the definition of the service portfolio and the service catalogue while managing the workflow associated with the fulfilment of service requests. Some standalone point solutions support specialized functionality in this area (see below).

Reporting is one of the key benefits of an integrated ITSM suite with the ability to provide management information in a common format utilizing the combined data from alloperational areas of the service lifecycle. This is of significant benefit, enabling analysis of the relationships between service management events (e.g. incidents that result in problems, changes that cause incidents, and releases that encapsulate certain changes) and all of the associated performance metric data that will feed the overall CSI initiatives.

7.1.2 Systems and network management

These tools are typically specific to the technology platforms that are under management and are used to administer the various domains but can provide a wide variety of data in support of the service management mission. These tools generate error messages for event management and correlation that ultimately feed the incident management and availability management processes. Utilization data from these platforms is the prime source for capacity and performance management and the most accurate method for establishing true availability of components that will support improvements in the area of MTRS and mean time between failures (MTBF). As the dynamic, real-time view of the current state of the service delivery chain this information can be integrated with the known service dependencies within the CMS to give enhanced visibility into the service provision to the end user. Many of these tools also support technology proprietary methods for software deployment within their domains (e.g. release of patches, pushing of firmware upgrades to remote components on the network) and can provide metric data in support of CSI for the change management and release and deployment management processes, along with dynamic updates to the CMS.

7.1.3 Event management

An event can be defined as any detectable or discernible occurrence that has significance for the management of the IT infrastructure or the delivery of IT services. There should be an evaluation of the impact any deviation might cause to the services. Events are typically created by an IT service, CI or monitoring tool. Events can be programmed to communicate operational information as well as warnings and exceptions. Warning and exception events are created when a tool senses a thresholdhas been met or an error condition is discovered. The major issue with this capability can be the significant volume of messages that are created from both the actualevent and the up- and down-stream impact, which can make it difficult to determine the real issue.

Specialized event management software can perform event correlation, impact analysis and root cause analysis to separate out these false-positive messages. Events are captured and assessed by rules-based, model-based and policy-based correlation technologies that can interpret a series of events and derive, isolate and report on the true cause and impact. These technologies support the CSI mission by providing information on availability impacts and performance thresholds that have been exceeded related to capacity or utilization. Well-correlated event management data provides a cost-effective method to improve the reliability, efficiency and effectivenessof the cross-domain IT infrastructure that supports the provision of business services.

A by-product of the extensive and often complex checks performed by these event management products is the collection of raw performance data to be used by many processes – for example, within capacity management analysis activities. This would allow simulated log-ons at any time during the day or night to check database availability and performance.

7.1.4 Automated incident/problem resolution

There are many products in the marketplace that support the automation of the traditional manual, labour-intensive and error-prone process of incident and problem discovery and resolution. Utilizing data from proactive detection monitors, any component or service outage generates an alert that automatically triggers diagnosis and repair procedures. These procedures then identify the root cause and resolve the issue using preprogrammed and scripted self-healing techniques, reducing the MTRS of many common causes of incidents, and in some cases preventing service outages completely. These tools also document audit-related information within the incident or problem record for future analysis and identification of other potential proactive CSI opportunities.

7.1.5 Knowledge management

There are specialist tools available that support and streamline the discipline of knowledge management. Providing efficient and accurate access to previous cases with proven resolution data, these tools address the symptoms associated with the current incident or problem. Capturing data throughout the incident and problem management lifecycles enables a knowledge management engine to assign related keywords and service relationships that will enhance the search process providing a high percentage of hits, thus speeding up the overall resolution process. Knowledge management tools also generate significant metrics aimed at measuring the improvement process itself. Key CSI data adds transparency to incident recurrence and frequency, utilization rates, the effectiveness of the stored resolutions and the impact knowledge management has on the efficacy of the overall support function.

7.1.6 Requesting services (service catalogue and workflow)

As mentioned in section 7.1.1, there are specialized tools that deal with service catalogue definition, requests for services and the workflow associated with theirfulfilment. Some of these tools provide the workflow engines and some rely heavily on the capabilities of the companion ITSM suite. These tools provide the technology required to define the services within a catalogue structure in conjunction with business customers and create a service portal (normally web-based) that allows users to request services. The request is then managed through the workflow engine assigning resources according to a defined process of tasks and related activities for each request type. These tools typically also capture related cost information to be fed to the financial systems for later charging activities. This functionality does much to support IT's integration with the business, defining services that underpin their mission and streamlining the delivery of commodity services that so often become asource of customer frustration. As in other tools, the true CSI benefit is that the data that is collected and reported relates to the quality of the services delivered, any bottlenecks encountered, and the ability to track the achievement of related service levels.

7.1.7 Performance management

Performance management tools allow for the collection of availability, capacity and performance data from a multitude of domains and platforms within the IT infrastructure environment. This data is used to populate the availability management information system (AMIS) and capacity management information system (CMIS), giving IT organizations a historical, current and future view of performance, resource and service usage for offline analysis and modelling activities. Capabilities of these tools generally include:

- Analysis of responsiveness, transaction and traffic throughput and utilization levels, supporting the balancing of resources to optimize performance of the IT services
- Workload assessment with predictive trend analysis of future growth and required capacity for each of the IT services being provided
- The construction of performance, resource and data usage profiles, enabling the comparison of actual utilization with planned models
- Predictive performance technology enabling the evaluation of tuning alternatives for systems, networks, databases and applications that support modelling of the expected outcomes
- Generation of the data required to report on SLAs, identify opportunities for improvement to include in the CSI register, and for building service improvement plans (SIPs).

There are many tools in the marketplace that support the overall CSI initiative across many aspects of performance management including business, service and resource capacity planning, feasibility analysis, modelling, solution development, implementation, management and ongoing monitoring of the IT service provision.

7.1.8 Application and service performance monitoring

There has always been a challenge related to understanding the true user experience related to service provision. Recognizing this need, many vendors provide tools that monitor the end-to-end delivery of services, using either active or passive technologies, to fully instrument and probe the many components of the service delivery chain. The software provides key metrics such as availability, transaction throughput, transaction response time, network latency, server efficiency,

database input and output, and Structured Query Language (SQL) effectiveness. This data provides system managers, application managers, availability management managers, capacity managers and service owners with the ability to analyse the delivery of services at all key points in the chain and look for potential improvements to streamline the overall delivery mechanisms. Usage trend data is vital for the availability management and capacity management processes, providing the information required to assess current performance and plan for future growth. This capability also enhances SLM's ability to track conformance to SLAs accurately and identify candidates for the service improvement process.

7.1.9 Statistical analysis tools

Most of the tools that are available to support the service management and systems management environments provide reporting capabilities but this is typically not enough to support robust availability management and capacity management capabilities. Raw data from many of the above tools needs to be captured into a single repository for collective analysis. This data provides input to the availability management and capacity management processes and supports the analysis of MTRS, MTBF, service failure, demand management, workload analysis, service modelling, application sizing and their related opportunities for improvement. This type of software provides the functionality to group data logically, model current services and enable predictive models to support future service growth, utilizing a wide array of analysis techniques.

7.1.10 Software version control/software configuration management

These tools support the control of all mainframe, open systems, network and applications software, providing a definitive media library type repository for the development environment. Version information must seamlessly integrate with the CMS and with release and deployment management.

7.1.11 Software test management

These tools support the testing and deployment activities of release and deployment management, providing development, regression testing, user acceptance testing and pre-production QA testing environments. Typically, there is additional functionality to support testing of specific functional requirements that were captured early in thedevelopment lifecycle. These tools should integrate with incident management to capture testing-related incidents that may affect the production version of the same software.

7.1.12 Information security management

These tools support and protect the integrity of the network, systems and applications, guarding against intrusion and inappropriate access and usage. As in the systems and network management area, all security-related hardware and software solutions should generate alerts that trigger the auto-generation of incidents for management through the normal processes.

7.1.13 Project and portfolio management

These tools support the registration, decision support, costing, resource management, portfolio visibility and project management of new business functionality and the services and systems that underpin them. These tools are typically used to manage the business-related aspects of IT. Integration points generally include: task assignments for development activities, change and release build information based on the agreed portfolio, capture of resource data from ITSM, total cost of ownership(TCO) of the service portfolio, and resource utilization data to financial management for IT services etc. These tools are

typically utilized to underpin the management board approval process related to strategic or major change projects.

7.1.14 Financial management for IT services

Financial management is a critical component of the IT services mission to ensure there are enough financial resources to maintain and develop the IT infrastructure and professional capabilities in support of the current and future needs of the business. A balanced budget in IT through the recovery of IT costs, with a solid understanding of the fiscal aspects of their operations, enables IT executives to justify their expenses on business services being supported.

In an increasing number of IT organizations this requires keeping track of resource and service utilization for the purpose of billing and chargeback of the shared IT resources. The costing and resource consumption measurement becomes critical to charge business customers effectively and accurately in an equitable, visible and auditable way.

Financial management for IT services tools collect raw metering data from a variety of sources including operating systems, databases, middleware and applications, associating this usage with users of services from specific departments. Data collectors gather critical usage metrics for each of the technologies being measured, link in the costing information from accounting software, and then report, analyse and allocate costs, enabling customers to evaluate the information in many dimensions.

Most tools interface with the CMS to manage costs for each CI and resource to generate data related to billing, reporting, charging and cost analysis. These tools typically federate with the organization's enterprise financial management applications and ERP system to acquire and share aggregate costs. Interfaces are also normally supported with project and portfolio management tools to facilitate the overall portfolio of investments.

Effective cost management is a basic requirement for the IT organizations of today; financial management for IT services tools is required to ensure that customers can not only understand the IT costs of their business operations, but also more accurately budget and enable IT to evaluate the overall effectiveness of the services provision. Successful implementation and usage of these tools supports the continual improvement of cost management and drive ever-increasing IT value to the business.

7.1.15 Business intelligence/reporting

In addition to the statistical analysis environment that requires a toolset to support technical data, there is also a need for a common repository of all service information and business-related data. Often these tools are provided by the same vendors who support the statistical analysis software but the focus in this instance is on providing business-related data from all of the above toolsets, representing a guide to direct the activities of IT as a whole in support of the business customer.

As the technology used to deliver IT services becomes increasingly complex, the distribution of services expands and the amount of centralized control we can apply is diminished, there will be a growing reliance on tools and software functionality to administer, manage, improve and ensure overall governance of IT service provision. As stated earlier, best-practice processes should determine what support functionality is required but we can be assured that the software industry will continue to

develop a wide and varied set of tools that can reduce the administrative overhead of managing processes and improve the overall quality of IT service provision.

7.2 Summary

For effective CSI it is important for organizations to view their tool requirements from an enterprise perspective. Figure 7.2 shows how an integrated toolset is required to underpin all the ITIL processes and provide a diverse range of data required for effective and efficient CSI. Tools for CSI should support the key operational activities of theseven-step improvement process: data gathering, data processing, data analysis and data presentation. Tools must provide for monitoring of each level of the service hierarchy: services, systems and components, as well as support the reporting activities for SLAs, OLAs and UCs.

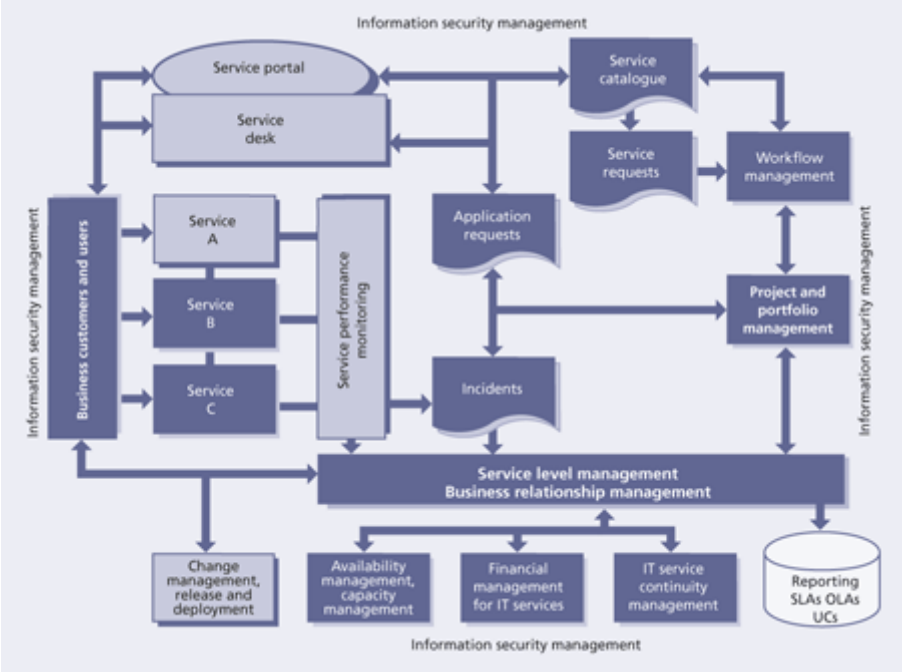


Figure 7.2 Service-centric view of the IT enterprise

8 Implementing continual service improvement

8.1 Critical considerations for implementing CSI
8.2 Where do I start?
8.3 Governance
8.4 CSI and organizational change
8.5 Communication strategy and plan
8.6 Summary

This publication has discussed implementing continual service improvement (CSI) from two perspectives: the implementation of CSI activities around services, and the implementation of CSI around service management processes. However, if your organization does not have very mature service management processes then it is usually difficult to execute the seven-step improvement process for services.

Immature processes usually have poor data quality if any at all. This is often because there are no processes or very ad hoc processes. Other organizations have multiple processes working with multiple tools being used to support the processes. If any monitoring is going on it may be at a component or application level but not from an end-to-end service perspective. There is no central gathering point for data, no resources allocated to process and analyse the data, and reporting consists of too much data broken into too many segments for anyone to analyse. Some organizations don't have any evidence of reporting at all.

8.1 Critical considerations for implementing CSI

Before implementing CSI it is important to have identified and filled the critical roles that have been identified in Chapter 6. These include a CSI manager, service ownerand reporting analyst. A service level manager facilitates the liaison between the customers and IT.

Monitoring and reporting on technology metrics, process metrics and service metrics need to be in place.

Internal service review meetings need to be scheduled in order to review from an internal IT perspective the results achieved each month. These internal review meetings should take place before any external review meeting with the business.

8.2 Where do I start?

8.2.1 Where do I start – the service approach

An organization can choose to implement CSI activities in many different ways. One way is to identify a certain service pain point such as a service that is not consistently achieving the desired results. Work with the service owner to validate the desired results and the trend results over the past few months. Review any monitoring that has been done. If there hasn't been any end-to-end monitoring in place but some component monitoring, then review what has been monitored and see if there are any consistent issues that are leading to the lower than expected service results. Even if there hasn't been any component monitoring conducted, review your incidents and see if you can find some trends and CIs that are consistently failing more than others and which impact the service. Also review the change records for the different CIs that together underpin the service.

The bottom line is that you have to start somewhere. If you don't feel you have adequate data from monitoring or from another process then the first step is to identify what to monitor, define the monitoring requirements, and put in place or begin using the technology required for monitoring.

Be sure to analyse the data to see if the trends make sense and whether there are any consistent failures or deviation from expected results. Report findings and identify improvement opportunities.

8.2.2 Where do I start – the lifecycle approach

Another approach is to start looking at the output from the different lifecycle stages. For example, service design personnel need to monitor and report on their activities and, through trend evaluation and analysis, identify improvement opportunities to implement. This needs to be done by every part of the lifecycle and CSI is engaged in this activity. Until the service is implemented we may not know if the right strategy was identified, so we may not have input until later for service strategy improvement.

As service transition personnel begin working with the designed service they may identify improvement opportunities for service design. CSI can be effective well before a service is implemented into the live environment.

8.2.3 Where do I start – the functional group approach

Perhaps your organization is experiencing a lot of failures or issues with servers. If this is the case, it may be a good opportunity to focus CSI activities within the functional group responsible for the servers, as server failures have a direct impact on service availability.

This should be a short-term solution only, as CSI activities should be reviewing services from an end-to-end perspective; however, it is often easier to have a small group focused on CSI activities. Perhaps this could be a pilot of CSI activities before a full deployment across the organization.

8.3 Governance

No matter if you are implementing CSI around service management or services, it is critical that governance is addressed from a strategic view. Organizations are facing the need to expand their IT service management strategies from an operational level to tactical and strategic levels to address business process automation, market globalization and the increasing dependency on IT for the efficient and reliable management and delivery of core business services. To address this requirement, formalized service management processes and specialized service and work management tools are being introduced to manage today's complex and distributed ITenvironments. Introducing service management processes into internal IT organizations requires a transformation to the IT culture.

Some internal IT organizations are still system/technology-management-based organizations, which are reactive in nature. Transforming to a service-management-based organization, which is more proactive in nature, is a step to aligning IT with business. It is also fundamental to achieving the goal of providing efficient and reliable management and delivery of core business services.

Implementing an IT service management (ITSM) process governance organization will support the development of, and transformation to, a process- and service-based organization and provide the organizational infrastructure to manage process improvement initiatives.

A comprehensive and integrated approach to the design, implementation and ongoing compliance to accepted ITSM standards includes:

- Organizational structures, roles and responsibilities
- IT processes, policies and controls.

8.3.1 Business drivers

The implementation of a standard ITSM process and governance is deemed as imperative to support current and future business plans:

- Support the organization's vision
- Provide standard IT processes and a stable and reliable IT environment to enable timely and efficient integration of new services and systems

- Provide process policies, standards and controls to comply with internal audit and external regulatory and legislation requirements
- Foster a climate of commitment to best practices
- Provide a standard ITSM process across the IT organization to support the organizational transformation to an enterprise IT services model while maintainingoperational stability and reliability to the business.

8.3.2 Process changes

Implementing CSI will have an impact on many parts of the IT organization. Processes, people, technology and management will undergo change. CSI needs to become a way of life within the organization. This may require new management structure, new technology and changes to processes to support CSI, and people will need to be trained and understand the importance of CSI within the organization.

If you only focus on changing a single process or technology CSI may not be effective. Figure 8.1 identifies how CSI should instead take a holistic view to improvements.

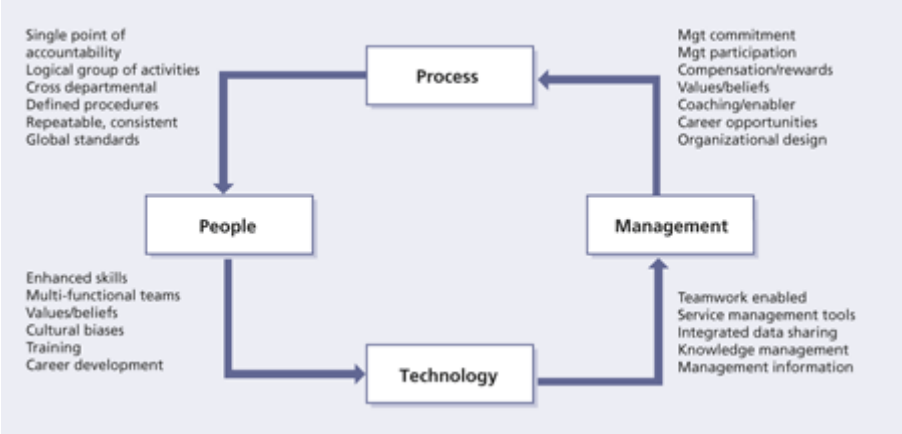


Figure 8.1 Process re-engineering changes everything

8.4 CSI and organizational change

Project management structures and frameworks fail to take into account the softer aspects involved in organizational change such as overcoming resistance to change, gaining commitment, empowering, motivating, involving and communicating. Experience reveals that it is precisely these aspects that prevent many CSI initiatives from realizing their intended aims. The success of a CSI initiative depends on the buy-in of all stakeholders. Gaining their support from the outset, and keeping it, will ensure their participation in the development process and acceptance of the solution. The first five steps in Table 8.1 identify the basic leadership actions required.

Those responsible for managing and steering the CSI initiative should consciously address these softer issues. Using an approach such as John P. Kotter's 'eight steps to transform your organization', coupled with formalized project management skills and practices, will significantly increase the chance of success.

Kotter, Professor of Leadership at Harvard Business School, investigated more than 100 companies involved in, or having attempted, a complex change programme and identified eight main steps that need to be implemented in order to successfully change. The eight steps, which are shown in Table 8.1, apply equally to ITSM implementation programmes.

Table 8.1 Eight steps that need to be implemented, and the main reasons why transformation efforts fail (from Kotter, 1996)

Step		Reasons for failure (quotes)
1	Create a sense of urgency	'50% of transformations fail in this phase'
		'Without motivation, people won't help and the effort goes nowhere'
		'76% of a company's management should be convinced of the need'
2	Form a guiding coalition	'Underestimating the difficulties in producing change'
		'Lack of effective, strong leadership'
		'Not a powerful enough guiding coalition ... opposition eventually stops the change initiative'
3	Create a vision	'Without a sensible vision, a transformation effort can easily dissolve into a list of confusing, incompatible projects that can take the organization in the wrong direction, or nowhere at all'
		'An explanation of 5 minutes should obtain a reaction of "understanding" and "interest"'
4	Communicate the vision	'Without credible communication, and a lot of it, the hearts and minds of the troops are never captured'
		'Make use of all communications channels'
		'Let the managers lead by example ... "walk the talk"'
5	Empower others to	'Structures to underpin the vision ... and

	act on the vision	removal of barriers to change'
		'The more people involved, the better the outcome'
		'Reward initiatives'
6	Plan for and create quick wins	'Real transformation takes time ... without quick wins, too many people give up or join the ranks of those opposing change'
		'Actively look for performance improvements and establish clear goals'
		'Communicate successes'
7	Consolidate improvements and produce more change	'Until changes sink deeply into the culture, new approaches are fragile and subject to regression'
		'In many cases, workers revert to old practice'
		'Use credibility of quick wins to tackle even bigger problems'
8	Institutionalize the change	'Show how new approaches, behaviour and attitude have helped improve performance'
		'Ensure selection and promotion criteria underpin the new approach'

8.4.1 Create a sense of urgency

Half of all transformations fail to realize their goals because they lack adequate attention to this step. Not enough people accept that change is essential. To create a sense of urgency, ask the question 'What if we do nothing?' Answering this question at all organizational levels will help gain commitment and provide input to a business justification for investing in CSI.

Examples of the consequences of doing nothing are:

- The business will lose money because of outages of crucial IT services, systems and applications.
- The business will find IT costs unacceptable and may insist on staffing reductions as an easy option for reducing costs.

The question 'What if we do nothing?' should be answered from the perspective of different stakeholders. This step could be taken in the form of one-on-one dialogues with stakeholders, workshops and team

meetings. The aim is to create a real awareness and commitment that the status quo is no longer acceptable.

8.4.2 Form a guiding coalition

Experience shows a need for assembling a group with sufficient power to lead the change effort and work together as a team. Power means more than simply formal authority but also experience, respect, trust and credibility. This team is the guiding coalition for the CSI.

It is important that the team leading the CSI has a shared understanding of the urgency and what it wants to achieve. A guiding coalition team does not have to comprise solely of senior managers. A guiding coalition should ensure that the organization is motivated and inspired to participate. A single champion cannot achieve success alone. Those initiating a CSI should try to gain full support from the stakeholders, including the business managers, IT staff and the user community. The team must be prepared to spend time and effort convincing and motivating others to participate.

In the beginning this team will be small and should include an influential business or IT sponsor. As the programme buy-in grows, and throughout the programme itself when more and more successes are achieved and benefits realized, this team should be increased to involve a wider range of people and functions. Conscious attention should be given to managing a formal and informal network that forms the basis of a guiding coalition, asking the questions 'Do we have the right people on board?' and, if not, 'Who should we have on board?'

8.4.3 Create a vision

The guiding coalition should be responsible for ensuring that a vision is produced describing the aim and purpose of CSI. A good vision statement can serve four important purposes. It can:

- Clarify the direction of the programme
- Motivate people to take action in the right direction
- Coordinate the actions of many different people
- Outline the aims of senior management.

Without a sensible and easily understood vision, a CSI implementation can easily dissolve into a list of confusing, incompatible projects that can take the organization in the wrong direction, or even nowhere at all. A vision that is easy to understand is also easy to explain. As a rule of thumb, if one cannot explain the vision in five minutes, the vision itself is not clear and focused enough.

A sound vision statement is important when forming a business justification for CSI; if one is already under way then having clear aims will help set more specific goals. The goals of CSI should be SMART (specific, measurable, achievable, relevant and time-bound) and addressed in terms relating to the business itself.

8.4.4 Communicate the vision

Although the vision is a powerful tool in helping guide and coordinate change, the real power is unleashed when the vision is effectively communicated to thestakeholders. Every stakeholder should understand the vision.

The sense of urgency ('What if we do nothing?') and the vision ('What's in it for me?') should form the basis of all communication to the stakeholders involved in or impacted by the CSI initiative. These messages should be aimed at motivating, inspiring and creating the necessary energy and commitment to buy in to the changeprogramme. An important aspect of the communication is demonstrating by example.

It is important to make use of all communications channels to get the messages across. Use the organization's newsletters, intranet site, posters, theme and team meetings, and seminars. Aim the communication at the specific needs and wants of each target group. For example, a presentation to computer operators, stressing the benefits of lower management costs and increased business availability, may be less likely to inspire them than the idea that they will have the chance to gain new skills and opportunities, or that they will be supported by the latest advanced management technology so they spend less time fire-fighting.

8.4.5 Empower others to act on the vision

Establishing the urgency, creating a guiding coalition, and creating and communicating a vision are all aimed at creating energy, enthusiasm, buy-in and commitment to enable successful change. In the empowering phase, two important aspects need to be stressed: enabling and removing barriers.

It is crucial to understand what is meant by empowerment. It is a combination of enabling people and removing barriers. Empowerment means giving people the tools, training, direction and assurance that they will be given clear and unambiguous fixed goals. Once people are empowered, they are accountable. That is why confirming their confidence before going ahead is important.

8.4.6 Plan for and create short-term wins

Implementing service management improvements can be a lengthy programme of change. It is important that, during the programme, short-term wins are realized and communicated. Short-term wins help to keep a change effort on track and to keep the energy and commitment levels high. Real transformation takes time. Without short-term wins, too many people give up or join the ranks of those opposing the change. Short-term wins can also be used to help:

- Convince sceptics of the benefits
- Retain support of influential stakeholders
- Expand the guiding coalition and get more people on board and committed to the programme
- Build confidence to tackle even more complex implementation issues and process integration.

Try to identify some short-term wins for each service and/or process and plan these into the CSI. It is also important that short-term wins are made visible and are communicated to all stakeholders. When planning to communicate the short-term wins, obtain answers to the questions 'For whom is it a short-term win?' and 'To what degree does it support the overall aims and goals?' and work these answers into the communication.

8.4.7 Consolidate improvements and produce more change

The success of short-term wins keeps the momentum going and creates more change. In CSI it is important to recognize short-, medium- and long-term wins. Changes should sink deeply into the new culture or the new approaches will be fragile and subject to regression:

- **Short-term wins** have the characteristics of convincing, motivating and showing immediate benefits and gains.
- **Medium-term wins** have the characteristics of confidence and capability, and having a set of working processes in place.
- **Long-term wins** have the characteristics of self-learning and expertise, and fully integrated processes that have self-learning and improvement built into them; reaching this stage requires a baseline of confident, capable delivery and real understanding. Trying to reach this level before having gone through the other levels is like trying to win an Olympic medal before commencing training.

8.4.8 Institutionalize the change

Change needs to be institutionalized within the organization. Many changes fail because they are not consolidated into everyday practice. This is akin to buying a membership to a gym but not going to the gym. To institutionalize a change means showing how new working practices have produced real gain and benefits, and ensuring that the improvements are embedded in all organizational practices.

Often the CSI team is disbanded before the working practices are institutionalized; there is a danger that people may revert to old working practices. This has to stop. CSI must be a way of life not a knee-jerk reaction to a failure of some sort.

These are some ways of institutionalizing changes:

- Hire people with ITIL experience or proven customer- or service-focused experience.
- When inducting new employees (in business and IT), include service management familiarization: 'This is the way we do things.'
- Include ITIL or service-management-focused training in employee training plans and offerings.
- Match service goals and management reporting to changing requirements, showing that they are used and requests are made for new sets of steering information.
- Identify clear action items in meeting minutes and act on them in a timely manner.
- Integrate new IT solutions and development projects into existing processes.

Signs that the changes have been institutionalized include:

- People defend the procedures and declare 'This is the way we work', rather than 'This is the way I've been told to do it'.
- People make suggestions for improving procedures and work instructions to make them more effective or efficient.
- Service and process owners are proud of their achievements and offer to give presentations and write articles.

8.4.9 Organization culture

Organizational culture is the whole of the ideas, corporate values, beliefs, practices and expectations about behaviour and daily customs that are shared by the employees in an organization – the normal way of doing things. Component parts of the culture include:

- The way authority is exercised and people rewarded
- Methods of communication
- The degrees of formality required in working hours and dress, and the extent to which procedures and regulations are enforced.

One could say culture is the heart of the matter or a key issue in implementing CSI. Culture could support an implementation or it could be the bearer of resistance.

Culture is continually named as one of the barriers in realizing any type of organizational change. When an organization has embraced CSI, the new organizational structure and technology receives overwhelming attention and almost no attention is paid to the effect on the culture. Culture isn't good or bad – it's just there.

An organization's culture can be immediately recognized by an outsider from the staff's attitudes and morale, their vocabulary – the phrases and buzzwords they use, and the stories and legends they tell of the organization's heroes. Continual improvement is about moving away from the hero mentality and focusing more on proactiveplanning and improving, instead of always reacting to fix something when it breaks.

8.4.9.1 Key concept

One of the keys to changing the culture of an organization is to understand that you do not start out to change the culture. You start out to change the employee's behaviour. In other words, when implementing CSI around services and service management processes you are asking the staff members to change how they do things. You want them to follow the new CSI activities and procedures, and use the tools appropriately.

As you change employees' behaviour then over time this changed behaviour becomes the organization's new culture. Senior management plays an important part in changing behaviour. Senior managers have to be the proper role models: if they don't follow a process they are giving permission to others to follow their lead. Senior managers have to ensure that people are rewarded for following the new process, and for CSI it means ongoing monitoring, analysing, reviewing, trend evaluation, reporting, identification of improvement opportunities and, of course, implementing those opportunities.

This will also require the help of your organization's human resource department, as changing employees' behaviour is directly tied to ensuring the job descriptions are up to date, employees' goals and objectives take into consideration service management responsibilities, and expectations include CSI activities. Also employeeperformance plans should be directly related to fulfilling these responsibilities and expectations. Whether an employee is performing an activity for service improvement or a change management activity, this should be recognized and employees rewarded based on the performance.

The following two statements are important when thinking about changing an employee's behaviour.

- **What gets rewarded gets done** This is why it is important to set up performance plans, performance appraisal systems and compensation plans to tie into CSI activities as well as other service management activities. If you are rewarding an employee for simply doing the daily activities of their job, and not for understanding the full end-to-end service management processes, there will be no incentive for them to gain a broader understanding. It will be hard to change an employee's behaviour when they get rewarded for doing what they do today.
- **You get what you inspect not what you expect** Organizations always expect employees to do certain things, but unless they are actually monitoring and checking to see if the tasks and activities are being done, there is little reason for an employee to do them. Remember the state of North Carolina example in section 5.6.5. The state achieved results through training, creating an awareness campaign and letting people know they were tracking results and would be discussing the results with the managers each month.

8.5 Communication strategy and plan

Timely and effective communication forms an important part of any service improvement project. In an effort to transform an organization from performing CSI activities *ad hoc* to undertaking more formal and ongoing CSI activities, it is critical that participants and stakeholders are informed of all changes to the processes, activities, roles and responsibilities.

The goal of the communications plan is to build and maintain awareness, understanding, enthusiasm and support among key influential stakeholders for the CSI initiative.

When developing a communication plan, it is important to realize that effective communication is not based solely on a one-way flow of information, and it is more than just meetings. A communications plan must incorporate the ability to deal with responses and feedback from the targeted audiences.

The plan should include a role to:

- Design and deliver communications to the different CSI roles, stakeholders such as other ITSM process roles and identified target audiences
- Identify forums for customer and user feedback
- Receive and deliver responses and feedback to the project manager and/or process team members.

Key activities for the communications plan include:

- Identifying stakeholders and target audiences
- Developing communications strategies and tactics
- Identifying communication methods and techniques
- Developing the communications plan (a matrix of who, what, why, when, where and how)
- Identifying the project milestones and related communications requirements
- The tools and techniques to use to gain a perspective on the level of audience understanding, e.g. surveys, website hits, event participation etc.

In order to change behaviours and ultimately an organization's culture will require a well-thought-out communication strategy and plan. An effective communication strategy and plan will focus on creating awareness of why the organization is implementing service management, why we want to formalize a CSI process, and why ITILwas chosen as the best-practice framework. The plan will also need to address how to provide service management education through formal training programmes or internal meetings, how to provide formal training on the new processes and tools that sets new expectations, and how to provide updates on progress and achievements.

When developing your communication strategy and plan it is important to take into consideration how corporate communication works today. In some organizations, if you want the chief information officer (CIO) to communicate something on behalf of CSI or any service management project, it may take a long time. This needs to be planned for.

Also keep in mind the culture around communicating with the business. In some organizations there are strict guidelines on who can communicate with the business. Often this is through the service level management (SLM) and business relationship management processes. No matter what the method is, always have communicating with the business as one of your key communication activities.

8.5.1 Defining a communication plan

Defining your plan needs to take into consideration the following topics:

- **Who is the messenger?** This is often overlooked when assessing the importance of aligning the messenger with the message. There are times when it is appropriate for the CIO to deliver a communication. Another time it may be a service owner or process owner who should be doing the communicating.
- **What is the message?** Define the purpose and objective of the message. This needs to be tailored to the target audience. Keep in mind the importance of communicating the benefits of the CSI initiative. The what's-in-it-for-me approach is still valid and needs to be addressed.
- **Who is the target audience?** The target audience for CSI could be senior management, mid-level managers or the staff who will be tasked with performing CSI activities. The target audience will often dictate who will deliver the message based on what the message is.
- **Timing and frequency of communication** Be sure to plan and execute your communication in a timely manner. The one constant about managing change is that for communication to be effective, it will take more than a one-time communication. If reporting is what is being communicated you will want to define your reporting timelines and frequency.
- **Method of communication** The old standby of sending emails and putting something on the web can work for some forms of communication, but in order to managechange effectively it is important to have a number of face-to-face meetings where there is an opportunity for two-way communications to take place. Attending staff meetings, holding information meetings open to all IT personnel and conducting town hall meetings are all effective methods that need to be considered.
- **Provide a feedback mechanism** Be sure to provide some method for employees to ask questions and provide feedback on the change initiative. Someone should have ownership of checking and ensuring that responses are provided to questions or comments.

Be sure to keep a record of all your communications as they illustrate how the communication plan has been executed.

You can develop a simple table for your communication plan as shown in Table 8.2. Keep in mind that you will be communicating to various groups within IT. Be sure to include senior management, mid-level managers and line contributors, as well as those working or supporting CSI activities.

Table 8.2 Table for sample communication plan

Messenger	Target audience	Message	Method of communication	Date and
CIO	All of IT	CSI initiative is kicking off	Town hall meeting	Month/

8.5.2 Communication transformation

The strategic management level usually initiates the communication about new initiatives and this should be true for implementing CSI within your organization. The CSI initiative is handed down from the strategic level to the tactical level and then to the operational level. It is more the rule than the exception that each level goes through its own transformation process. It is important that the same message is being sent and received as the vision is communicated down the organization. The outcome of this process is the cause and often the demand for the next level in an organization to transform. Information about this process and how people are dealing with it are seldom handed down. Unfortunately the higher level gives little feedback about this process to the next level.

What also happens is that the content of the vision and reasons for the organizational change becomes less understood as it moves down through the organization. Only parts of the rationale behind the organizational change come through to the operational level. Figure 8.2 shows how only part of the original content of the vision is handed down ('the shadow of the upper level') to the operational level. As the message is passed through the organizational levels, the clarity and content of the vision is blurred even further.

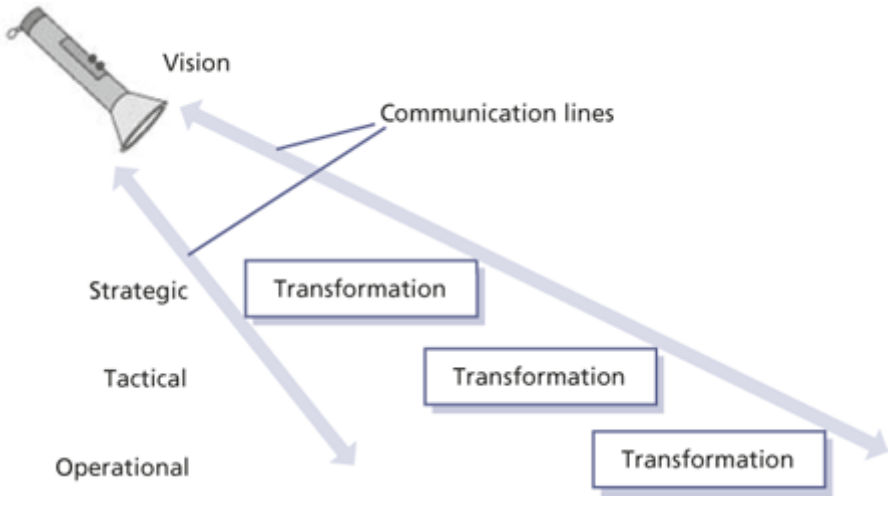


Figure 8.2 Vision becomes blurred

Because each management level has its own separate transformation processes they fail to appreciate the feelings of the other levels. This is most evident for operational level staff, who feel particularly vulnerable if they have not been involved in the discussions. Yet the commitment and energy of operational level staff are essential to the success of any organizational change.

8.6 Summary

Developing a governance structure is important for formalizing CSI in your organization. CSI will require that key roles are filled for trend evaluation, analysis reporting and decision-making.
Process compliance is critical for ensuring the proper output for process metrics to be used for identifying process improvement initiatives. Technology will need to be in place for monitoring and reporting.
Communication is critical to help change employees' behaviour. Communication will be necessary to identify the target audience, who the messenger is, what message is being communicated and what is the best way to communicate the message.

Figure 8.3 shows the roles and key inputs that are involved in the different phases of continual improvement.

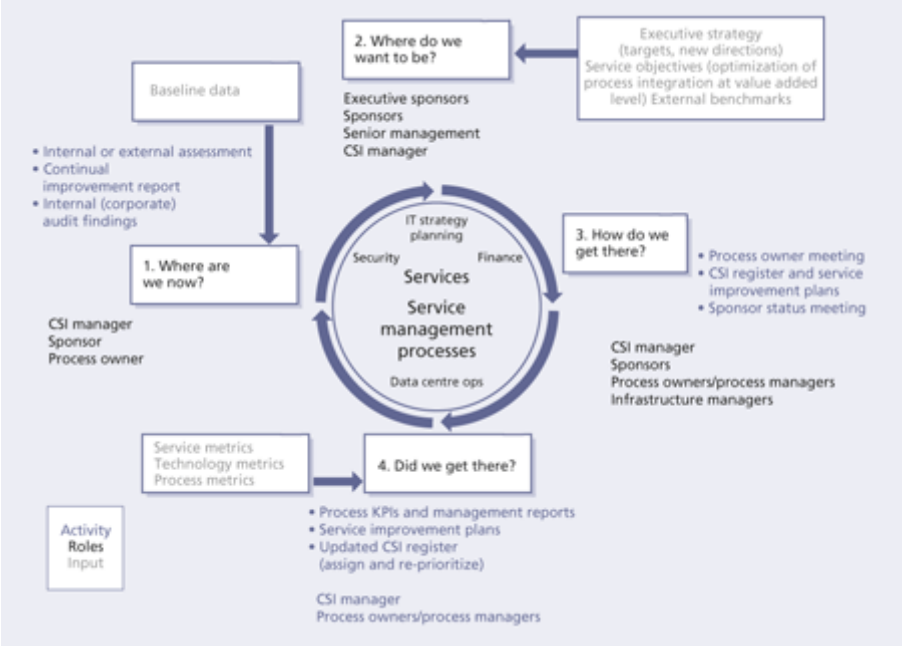


Figure 8.3 CSI roles and inputs

9 Challenges, risks and critical success factors

9.1 Challenges
9.2 Critical success factors
9.3 Risks
9.4 Summary

9.1 Challenges

Every organization has its unique set of challenges. As with implementing any type of change within an organization, one of the major challenges is managing the behavioural changes required.

Another issue is that continual service improvement (CSI) often requires adequate tools for monitoring and gathering the data, analysing the data for trends and reporting on the data. CSI does not happen only through automation but also requires resources to be allocated to CSI activities. Those allocating resources need to understand their roles and responsibilities and have the correct skill sets to execute the CSI activities.

These are some of the common challenges you may encounter when implementing CSI:

- Lack of management commitment
- Inadequate resources, budget and time
- Lack of mature service management processes
- Lack of information, monitoring and measurements
- Lack of knowledge management
- A resistance to planning and a reluctance to be proved wrong
- Lack of corporate objectives, strategies, policies and business direction
- Lack of IT objectives, strategies and policies
- Lack of knowledge and appreciation of business impacts and priorities
- Diverse and disparate technologies and applications
- Resistance to change and cultural change
- Poor relationships and communication, and lack of cooperation between IT and the business
- Lack of tools, standards and skills
- Tools too complex and costly to implement and maintain
- Over-commitment of resources with an associated inability to deliver (e.g. projects always late or over budget)
- Poor supplier management and/or poor supplier performance.

9.2 Critical success factors

These are some critical success factors (CSFs):

- Appointing a CSI manager
- Adopting CSI within the organization
- Management commitment – ongoing, visible participation in CSI activities such as creating vision for CSI, communicating vision, direction setting and decision-making, when appropriate
- Defining clear criteria for prioritizing improvement projects
- Adopting the service lifecycle approach
- Having sufficient and ongoing funding for CSI activities
- Resource allocation – people dedicated to the improvement effort not as just another add-on to their already long list of tasks to perform
- Technology supporting the CSI activities
- Adopting processes – embracing service management processes instead of adapting it to suit their own personal needs and agenda.

9.3 Risks

These are some risks:

- Being over-ambitious – don't try to improve everything at once; be realistic with timelines and expectations
- Not discussing improvement opportunities with the business – the business has to be involved in improvement decisions that will impact it
- Not focusing on improving both services and service management processes
- Not prioritizing improvement projects
- Implementing CSI with little or no technology
- Implementing a CSI initiative with no resources – this means that people must be allocated and dedicated to this
- Implementing CSI without knowledge transfer and training – this means educating first (acquire knowledge), then training (practise using the newly acquired knowledge); training should be undertaken as close to the launch of improvement as possible
- Not performing all steps of the seven-step improvement process – it is important that all steps of the improvement process are followed; missing any one step can lead to a poor decision on what and how to improve
- Lack of making strategic, tactical or operational decisions based on knowledge gained – reports are actually used; people see that the reports are being used
- Lack of management taking action on recommended service improvement opportunities
- Lack of meeting personnel in the business to understand new business requirements
- Lack of communication/awareness campaign for any improvement, or it is late or missing altogether
- Not involving the right people at all levels to plan, build, test and implement the improvement
- Removing testing before implementation or only partially testing so all aspects of the improvement (people, process and technology) must be tested, including the documentation.

9.4 Summary

Implementing CSI is not an easy task: it requires a change in management and staff attitudes and values that continual improvement is something that needs to be carried out proactively and not reactively.

Identifying the risks and challenges before implementing CSI is a critical first step. A SWOT analysis (examining strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats) can help identify these items. It is important to define mitigation strategies for the risks and identify how to best overcome challenges that an organization may encounter.

Knowing the CSFs before undertaking CSI implementation will help manage the risks and challenges. Don't try to change everything at once.

Afterword

For centuries people have been sailing across the oceans in ships. While a very few have been intrepid explorers intent on charting new territory and new routes to far-off lands, most have simply set off on a

journey from their home port to a distant destination. They plotted a course which would get them there safely in a reasonable time and then set sail. The risks were high, but the rewards were even higher. If the final destination was too far they plotted a series of smaller journeys with stops at points along the way allowing them to get to their destination in steps. The course would often take them far from the sight of land, so each day they would need to check if they were still on course. In the beginning they used the stars, then the compass, the sextant, radio beacons and now global positioning satellites. The technology has changed radically but the goal is still the same: determine where you are right now and if the winds or the currents have moved you off course you must make adjustments in order to reach your destination. Continual service improvement is your journey. Your destination is your vision of a near-perfect future state. The vision may be far off, requiring you to set smaller goals along the way. You set the course for near perfection and continually check to see whether you are still on course. Continually making the necessary adjustments on your journey will enable you to reach your destination. Good sailing!

Appendix A: Related guidance

A.1 ITIL guidance and web services
A.2 Quality management system
A.3 Risk management
A.4 Governance of IT
A.5 COBIT
A.6 ISO/IEC 20000 service management series
A.7 Environmental management and green/sustainable IT
A.8 ISO standards and publications for IT
A.9 ITIL and the OSI framework
A.10 Programme and project management
A.11 Organizational change
A.12 Skills Framework for the Information Age
A.13 Carnegie Mellon: CMMI and eSCM framework
A.14 Balanced scorecard
A.15 Six Sigma

This is a common appendix across the ITIL core publications. It includes frameworks, best practices, standards, models and quality systems that complement and have synergy with the ITIL service lifecycle.

Section 2.1.7 describes the role of best practices in the public domain and references some of the publications in this appendix. Each core publication references this appendix where relevant.

Related guidance may also be referenced within a single ITIL core publication where the topic is specific to that publication.

A.1 ITIL guidance and web services

ITIL is part of the Best Management Practice (BMP) portfolio of best-practice guidance (see section 1.3). BMP products present flexible, practical and effective guidance, drawn from a range of the most successful global business experiences. Distilled to its essential elements, the guidance can then be applied to every type of businessand organization.

The BMP website (www.best-management-practice.com) includes news, reviews, case studies and white papers on ITIL and all other BMP best-practice guidance.

The ITIL official website (www.itil-officialsite.com) contains reliable, up-to-date information on ITIL – including information on accreditation and the ITIL software scheme for the endorsement of ITIL-based tools.

Details of the core publications are as follows:

- Cabinet Office (2011). *ITIL Service Strategy*. TSO, London.
- Cabinet Office (2011). *ITIL Service Design*. TSO, London.
- Cabinet Office (2011). *ITIL Service Transition*. TSO, London.
- Cabinet Office (2011). *ITIL Service Operation*. TSO, London.
- Cabinet Office (2011). *ITIL Continual Service Improvement*. TSO, London.

The full ITIL glossary, in English and other languages, can be accessed through the ITIL official site at:

www.itil-officialsite.com/InternationalActivities/ITILGlossaries.aspx

The range of translated glossaries is always growing, so check this website for the most up-to-date list.

Details of derived and complementary publications can be found in the publications library of the Best Management Practice website at:

www.best-management-practice.com/Publications-Library/IT-Service-Management-ITIL/

A.15 Six Sigma

Six Sigma is a data-driven process improvement approach that supports continual improvement. It is business-output-driven in relation to customer specification. Theobjective is to implement a measurement-oriented strategy focused on process improvement and defects reduction. A Six Sigma defect is defined as anything outside customer specifications.

Six Sigma focuses on dramatically reducing process variation using statistical process control (SPC) measures. The fundamental objective is to reduce errors to fewer than 3.4 defects per million executions (regardless of the process). Service providers must determine whether it is reasonable to expect delivery at a Six Sigma level given the wide variation in IT deliverables, roles and tasks within IT operational environments.

There are two primary sub-methodologies within Six Sigma: DMAIC (Define, Measure, Analyse, Improve, Control) and DMADV (Define, Measure, Analyse, Design, Verify). DMAIC is an improvement method for existing processes for which performance does not meet expectations, or for which incremental improvements are desired. DMADV focuses on the creation of new processes. For more information, see:

- George, Michael L. (2003). *Lean Six Sigma for Service: How to Use Lean Speed and Six Sigma Quality to Improve Services and Transactions*. McGraw-Hill.
- Pande, Pete and Holpp, Larry (2001) *What Is Six Sigma?* McGraw-Hill.

- Pande, Peter S., Neuman, Robert P. and Cavanagh, Roland R. (2000). *The Six Sigma Way: How GE, Motorola, and Other Top Companies are Honing their Performance*. McGraw-Hill.

Appendix B: Example of a continual service improvement register

Opportunity no.	Date raised	Size (small, medium, large)	Time escale (short, medium, long)	Description	Priority (urgent, 1, 2, 3)	KPI metric	Justification	Raised by	To be actioned by	Date required by
1	01/04/2011	Small	Short	A number of failures have occurred when implementing updated or newapplications. This has been caused by the testing procedure in releaseand deployment using out-of-datetest data . The requirement is to update the test data in repository test 4371	Urgent	*n*% reduction in failures	Significant reduction in failures after transition and resulting business impact	A. Other	J. Doe	14/4/2011
2	01/05/2011	Medium	Long	Event management: the number ofalerts from the ABC 479 module of the payroll suite is still excessive causing	2	n% reduction in spurious even	Will help reduce the amount of analysis time and avoid	N. More	J. Smith	01/07/2011

				unnecessary analysis time. Additional filtering required		ts	potential oversight of significant events			
3	01/06/2011	Medium	Long	Training issue: Service desk staff would benefit from additional training in the use of the human resources (HR) joiners and leavers application	3	n% improvement in relevant staff trained in the HR joiners and leavers application	All queries to the service desk on this applicationcurrently have to be escalated to the application management team. With some basic training a number of these could be dealt with by first line support	B. Floor	F. Less	01/09/2011
4	01/07/2011	Large	Medium	Change management process: having multiple authorization channels has caused issues with some users because of uncoordinated changes	3	Alignment to single channel	Redesign of the change management process will reduce confusion and impact to stakeh	J. Jones	B. Car	10/10/2011

olders

Appendix C: Risk assessment and management

C.1 Definition of risk and risk management
C.2 Management of Risk (M_o_R)
C.3 ISO 31000
C.4 ISO/IEC 27001
C.5 Risk IT

This appendix contains basic information about several broadly known and used approaches to the assessment and management of risk. It is not intended to be a comprehensive study of the subject, but rather to provide an awareness of some of the methods in use.

Appendix D: Examples of inputs and outputs across the service lifecycle

This appendix identifies some of the major inputs and outputs between each stage of the service lifecycle. This is not an exhaustive list and is designed to help understand how the different lifecycle stages interact. See Table 3.1 for more detail on the inputs and outputs of the CSI stage.

Lifecycle stage	Examples of inputs from other service lifecycle stages	Examples of outputs to other service lifecycle stages
Service strategy	Information and feedback for business cases and service portfolio Requirements for strategies and plans Inputs and feedback on strategies and policies Financial reports, service reports, dashboards, and outputs of service review meetings Response to change proposals Service portfolio updates including the service catalogue Change schedule Knowledge and information in the service knowledge management system (SKMS)	Vision and mission Strategies, strategic plans and policies Financial information and budgets Service portfolio Change proposals Service charters including service packages, service models, and details of utilityand warranty Patterns of business activity and demand forecasts Updated knowledge and information in the SKMS Achievements against metrics, KPIs and CSFs Feedback to other lifecycle

		stages Improvement opportunities logged in the CSI register
Service design	Vision and mission Strategies, strategic plans and policies Financial information and budgets Service portfolio Service charters including service packages, service models, and details of utility and warranty Feedback on all aspects of service design and service design packages Requests for change (RFCs) for designing changes and improvements Input to design requirements from other lifecycle stages Service reports, dashboards, and outputs of service reviewmeetings Knowledge and information in the SKMS	Service portfolio updates including the service catalogue Service design packages, including: Details of utility and warranty Acceptance criteria Updated service models Designs and interface specifications Transition plans Operation plans and procedures Information security policies Designs for new or changed services, management information systems and tools, technology architectures, processes, measurement methods and metrics SLAs, OLAs and underpinning contracts RFCs to transition or deploy new or changed services Financial reports Updated knowledge and information in the SKMS Achievements against metrics, KPIs and CSFs Feedback to other lifecycle stages Improvement opportunities logged in the CSI register
Service	Vision and mission	New or changed services,

transition	Strategies, strategic plans and policies Financial information and budgets Service portfolio Change proposals, including utility and warranty requirements and expected timescales RFCs for implementing changes and improvements Service design packages, including: Details of utility and warranty Acceptance criteria Service models Designs and interface specifications Transition plans Operation plans and procedures Input to change evaluation and change advisory board (CAB) meetings Knowledge and information in the SKMS	management information systems and tools, technologyarchitectures, processes, measurement methods and metrics Responses to change proposals and RFCs Change schedule Known errors Standard changes for use in request fulfilment Knowledge and information in the SKMS (including the configuration management system) Financial reports Updated knowledge and information in the SKMS Achievements against metrics, KPIs and CSFs Feedback to other lifecycle stages Improvement opportunities logged in the CSI register
Service operation	Vision and mission Strategies, strategic plans and policies Financial information and budgets Service portfolio Service reports, dashboards, and outputs of service reviewmeetings Service design packages, including: Details of utility and warranty Operations plans and procedures Recovery procedures Service level agreements (SLAs), operational level agreements (OLAs) and underpinning contracts	Achievement of agreed service levels to deliver value to the business Operational requirements Operational performance data and service records RFCs to resolve operational issues Financial reports Updated knowledge and information in the SKMS Achievements against metrics, KPIs and CSFs Feedback to other lifecycle stages Improvement opportunities logged in the CSI register

	Known errors Standard changes for use in request fulfilment Information security policies Change schedule Patterns of business activity and demand forecasts Knowledge and information in the SKMS	
Continual service improvement	Vision and mission Strategies, strategic plans and policies Financial information and budgets Service portfolio Achievements against metrics, key performance indicators (KPIs) and critical success factors (CSFs) from each lifecycle stage Operational performance data and service records Improvement opportunities logged in the CSI register Knowledge and information in the SKMS	RFCs for implementing improvements across all lifecycle stages Business cases for significant improvements Updated CSI register Service improvement plans Results of customer and user satisfaction surveys Service reports, dashboards, and outputs of service review meetings Financial reports Updated knowledge and information in the SKMS Achievements against metrics, KPIs and CSFs Feedback to other lifecycle stages